DIPLOMARBEIT

Titel der Diplomarbeit
„Materials for the Study of Gesar Practices“

Verfasser
Gregory Forgues

angestrebter akademischer Grad
Magister der Philosophie (Mag.phil.)

Wien, 2011

Studienkennzahl lt. Studienblatt: A 389
Studienrichtung lt. Studienblatt: Diplomstudium Tibetologie und Buddhismuskunde
Betreuer: Ao. Univ.-Prof. Dr. Helmut Tauscher
# Table of Contents

1 ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS ..................................................................................................................4

2 INTRODUCTION ...........................................................................................................................8

2.1 CURRENT STATUS OF RESEARCH AND OBJECTIVE OF THE STUDY ..............................10
2.2 PRIMARY LITERATURE: A CATALOG OF EARLY GESAR RITUALS ....................................15
2.3 SECONDARY LITERATURE—ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY ..................................................61

3 TRANSLATIONS OF SELECTED GESAR RITUALS ..............................................................104

3.1 THE ACCOMPLISHER OF ASPIRATIONS ..............................................................................104
  3.1.1 Introduction .....................................................................................................................104
  3.1.2 Edition ..........................................................................................................................105
  3.1.3 Translation .....................................................................................................................110

3.2 mDo mKhyen brtse, The Wheel of Weapons [Forged from] Meteoric Iron (Text 12) .........119
  3.2.1 Introduction .....................................................................................................................119
  3.2.2 Edition ..........................................................................................................................119
  3.2.3 Translation .....................................................................................................................120

3.3 mKhyen brtse’i dbang po, The Melody of the Golden Age Cloud (Text 43) .......................124
  3.3.1 Introduction .....................................................................................................................124
  3.3.2 Edition ..........................................................................................................................124
  3.3.3 Translation .....................................................................................................................126

3.4 mKhyen brtse’i dbang po, The Auspicious Melody (Text 44) ............................................131
  3.4.1 Introduction .....................................................................................................................131
  3.4.2 Edition ..........................................................................................................................131
  3.4.3 Translation .....................................................................................................................133

3.5 mChog gyur gling pa, Prayer to Gesar (without title—introduction to text) .....................136
  3.5.1 Introduction .....................................................................................................................136
  3.5.2 Edition ..........................................................................................................................136
  3.5.3 Translation .....................................................................................................................136

3.6 mChog gyur gling pa, Smoke ritual (without title—text 26) .............................................138
  3.6.1 Introduction .....................................................................................................................138
  3.6.2 Edition ..........................................................................................................................138
  3.6.3 Translation .....................................................................................................................138

3.7 Kong sprul, The [Gem] That Brings Down the Rain of [All That Is] Needed and Desired (Text 45) .........................................................................................................................140
  3.7.1 Introduction .....................................................................................................................140
3.7.2 Edition ................................................................................................................................. 140
3.7.3 Translation .......................................................................................................................... 145

3.8 MI PHAM, PRACTICE OF THE UNION WITH THE GURU, THE GREAT BEING OF THE
UNCHANGING PRIMORDIAL KNOWING, SHEER KNOWING (TEXT 47) ............................................. 153
3.8.1 Introduction .......................................................................................................................... 153
3.8.2 Edition ................................................................................................................................. 153
3.8.3 Translation .......................................................................................................................... 155

3.9 MI PHAM, THE KING OF VAJRA LIFE (TEXT 50) .................................................................... 158
3.9.1 Introduction .......................................................................................................................... 158
3.9.2 Edition ................................................................................................................................. 158
3.9.3 Translation .......................................................................................................................... 168

3.10 MI PHAM, THE INNERMOST ESSENCE OF THE JEWEL THAT SUBDUES THE ENEMIES (TEXT
67) .................................................................................................................................................. 184
3.10.1 Introduction .......................................................................................................................... 184
3.10.2 Edition ................................................................................................................................. 184
3.10.3 Translation .......................................................................................................................... 185

3.11 MI PHAM, PITH INSTRUCTION ON THE WEALTH SĀDHANA OF GESAR (TEXT 73) ......... 188
3.11.1 Introduction .......................................................................................................................... 188
3.11.2 Edition ................................................................................................................................. 188
3.11.3 Translation .......................................................................................................................... 189

3.12 MI PHAM, THE SWIFT ACCOMPLISHER OF [THE FOUR] ACTIVITIES (TEXT 85) .............. 193
3.12.1 Introduction .......................................................................................................................... 193
3.12.2 Edition ................................................................................................................................. 193
3.12.3 Translation .......................................................................................................................... 214

3.13 MI PHAM, SCROLL ABOUT THE PROFOUND AND SECRET ORAL TRADITION OF bSE ru ’od
LDAN Dkar po (TEXT 58) ................................................................................................................ 243
3.13.1 Introduction to texts 58, 59, and 60 .................................................................................... 243
3.13.2 Edition ................................................................................................................................. 243
3.13.3 Translation .......................................................................................................................... 246

3.14 MI PHAM, THE CLEAR JEWEL MIRROR (TEXT 59) ................................................................. 251
3.14.1 Edition ................................................................................................................................. 251
3.14.2 Translation .......................................................................................................................... 252

3.15 MI PHAM, OFFERING TO THE wER MA OF THE LIGHT OF THE WHITE A (WITHOUT TITLE—
TEXT 60) ........................................................................................................................................... 255
3.15.1 Edition ................................................................................................................................. 255
3.15.2 Translation .......................................................................................................................... 256

4 THE MAIN SEMANTIC FIELDS SPECIFIC TO GESAR RITUALS .......................................... 259

4.1 INDEXED GLOSSARY OF TECHNICAL TERMS IN THE TRANSLATED TEXTS ................. 259
1 Acknowledgements

The project of understanding the theory and practice of Buddhadharma started years ago when I was living in Asia. Just as one explores a foreign land by first becoming acquainted with the landscape, the peoples, the various languages, and the history, I embarked upon a long and fascinating journey across a vast new world. I would like to thank from the bottom of my heart my teachers, Dzongsar Khyentse Rinpoche, Namkhai Norbu Rinpoche, the late Bhikkuni Tri Hai, and Chanmyay Sayadaw U Janakabhivamsa, who have been great sources of inspiration during the past twelve years of my training. My deepest gratitude extends to Dzongsar Khyentse Rinpoche for his continuous display of wisdom and kindness, as well as his contagious enthusiasm and energy, his intellectual curiosity, openness of mind, and constant challenge of conventions. Like Mañjuśrī uncompromisingly wielding the sword of insight while smiling, Rinpoche taught me in a joyful manner that a truly critical mind ‘cuts both ways’.

This research project was initiated following a lecture given at the University of Vienna by Géza Bethlenfalvy, M.A. (Hungarian Academy of Sciences and Department of Inner Asian Studies, Eötvös Loránd University, Budapest). I would like to thank him for having made available to me a manuscript of a Gesar ritual he acquired in Mongolia.

Likewise, I am deeply grateful to my advisor, Ao. Univ.-Prof. Dr. Helmut Tauscher, for his insightful comments, advice, and . . . unflagging patience. Without him, I could have never started this journey across the syntactic maze of classical Tibetan poetry. I am very much indebted to his knowledge and generous guidance.
I would also like to take this opportunity to express my gratitude to Alak Zenkar Rinpoche (Tudeng Nima), Larry Mermelstein, Dr. Charles Ramble (Oriental Institute, University of Oxford), Khenpo Punchok Namgal, and the late Gene Smith for their helpful suggestions regarding technical terms and particular aspects of the Gesar practices. Gene Smith’s departure when I was reaching the end of this thesis was unexpected. Embodying the qualities of a modern Bodhisattva and scholar, he has remained as a great source of inspiration.

I would also like to acknowledge the assistance of Karl and Cassell Gross with the English corrections of this thesis. I am extremely grateful to them for their editorial acumen and helpful suggestions.

Though not actively involved in this thesis, I would also like to give my sincerest thanks to my academic teachers at the Department of South Asian, Tibetan and Buddhist Studies, University of Vienna, Prof. Dr. Birgit Kellner, Univ.-Doz. Dr. Helmut Krasser, Dr. Horst Lasic, Univ.-Ass. Dr. Anne MacDonald, Univ. Prof. Dr. Klaus-Dieter Mathes, Emeritus Univ.-Prof. Dr. Ernst Steinkellner, Dr. Kurt Tropper, Ao. Univ.-Prof. Dr. Chlodwig H. Werba, for all their invaluable contributions, advice, and support. My thanks also go to my friends at the Department of South Asian, Tibetan and Buddhist Studies of the University of Vienna, Dennis, Istvan, Rolf, Christian, Markus, and Honza, who were patient enough to discuss various topics—directly or indirectly—related to this thesis.

Without the support, inspiration, and love of my family in Austria and in France, I could have never completed this project. I would like to thank all of them, and in particular my wife Gabi, as well as my children Anaïs and Matthias,
for having let me turn the living-room into the library of Alexandria, at least for a few months.

The following pages contain a modest contribution to the Gesar studies. Without the involvement of generations of scholars, this study would have been impossible. Moreover, from the perspective of cultural anthropology, there cannot be any ‘observation’ without ‘participation’: my thanks are extended to all practitioners and scholars of the past, present, and future. Finally, I would like to pay homage to my outer, inner, and secret ‘subject’ of research, Gesar, as well as to Jam mgon ’ju mi pham rgya mtsho, whose sublime manifestations have been a constant source of inspiration, strength, and enthusiasm.
Your nature is the Vajra of Gentle glory itself.
Your aspect is the form of the dgra bla sovereign of all that appears and exists.
In a former life, you were the holder of sheer knowing, Padmasambhava,
At present, you are the great lion, the power of the Jewel that subdues the enemies,
In the future, you will be Kalkin Raudra Cakrin.
Supreme deity of my heart, inseparable from me,
State of indivisibility endowed with the Vajra voice,
Together with your armies of the four dgyes yums, knights, dwang smans, dgra blas and wer mas,
Haughty spirits of all that appears and exists, the eight classes of gods and demons, your attendants,
With the ambrosia cloud of the outer, inner, and secret primordial knowing,
This supreme offering that is the fulfillment of the sacred bond,
I supplicate you, I worship you, I fulfill the sacred pledge,
I enthrone you, I praise you, I venerate you!

—dGra ’dul nor bu ’i snying tig—
2 Introduction

The Tibetan epic of Gesar is the largest in the world. It narrates the life, adventures, and deeds of Gesar, a manifestation—as a human being—of Padmasambhava, who is sent to earth to protect the *Buddhadharma* and to destroy demons threatening the land of Gling. First and foremost a versified oral narrative in the form of cantos (*sgrung*) told by bards (*sgrung pa* or *sgrung mkhan*), this living storytelling tradition, first mentioned in *rLangs po ti bse ru* (15th c.), has been in constant expansion since its inception, with new episodes recently added to the vast corpus of existing songs.¹ Widely spread throughout Tibet and parts of Central Asia, the Gesar narratives were originally purely oral, although some versions of the epic have been written down over time. Consequently, the Gesar epic came to be a mine of information regarding traditional Tibetan culture. It is of particular interest since it includes materials leading us to a better understanding of Tibetan society—for instance, on a religious level, as in the case of the relation between Vajrayāna and pre-Buddhist cults, or from a political and institutional perspective, as illustrated by the concept of political authority presented through the narration of Gesar’s deeds.

A later religious development in Mongolia and Tibet finding its source in this epic is the propitiation of Gesar as a *Dharma* protector, and later, as a yidam. In the region of Khams, rituals² to propitiate Gesar as a protector—some of them being in fact full-fledged *sādhanas* presenting him as a yidam—have thus been ‘retrieved’ as treasure-texts (*gter ma*) or composed by lamas belonging to the so-

---

¹ See Maconi 2004: 372.
² In this study, I use the term ‘ritual’ for *cho ga* as defined and discussed in Cabezón 2010: 10-22.
called *ris med* movement. These *gter mas* now constitute a corpus of texts and Vajrayāna practices about Gesar that are not part of the epic *per se* although they are inextricably linked to it from a philological and religious point of view. Since the cult of Gesar remains extremely popular to this day, this study is about these Tibetan tantric texts and their practices.

To study the traditions around Gesar takes us into the realms of myth, epic, theurgy, and ritual. Gesar, as a manifestation of Padmasambhava, is usually associated with Buddhist tantric rituals pertaining to auspiciousness, happiness and protection. Schicklgruber defines myth and ritual in the following way: “As myths represent a theory of the view of life (Weltbild), rituals are a means to handle it.”

As pointed out by Lacarrière 2004: 222, this is where an epic differs from either a myth or a ritual: an epic is a story based on a nucleus of ancient historical events which have been gradually altered through subsequent narrative elaborations and which occasionally integrate some mythic elements belonging to the local cultural substrate. The myths contained in the Gesar epic represent the basis of the Gesar rituals, which function to deliberately model and emulate Gesar’s qualities from a mundane and spiritual perspective. In this sense, most Gesar rituals written in the 19th century differ from the Gesar epic in that they are practice texts based on rDzogs chen and on the rNying ma foundational myths.

---


These Gesar rituals represent a transformational ‘spiritual technology’ corresponding to the Weltbild expounded in the epic.5

2.1 Current status of research and objective of the study

Following earlier references to the epic of Gesar made by Peter Simon Pallas and Csoma de Körös, the first translation into a European language, German, was carried out by I. J. Schmidt in 1839, followed by Francke’s translation into German of a Ladakhi version of the epic in 1900 and 1902. The most complete available studies of the epic to date are, however, in French: in the fifties, Stein published a translation of the Amdo version of the epic (Stein 1956) followed by a seminal study of the epic in all its aspects—philological, sociological, and historical. Stein also wrote a monograph about Tibetan civilization, together with several articles representing very important resources to understand some of the typically Tibetan aspects of the epic (Stein 1978, 1979, 1990 inter alia).6 Helffer also published in French a detailed study of Gesar cantos (Helffer 1977). In the meantime, research in German did not come to an end: Hermanns offered a translation of the Eastern version of the epic in 1965, followed a few years later by Kaschewsky and Tsering’s translation of Gesar’s fight against Kashmir (1972), while Heissig studied the Geser epic in Mongolia, and Herrmann worked on the Western versions of the epic (Herrmann 1991).

5 For a definition of ritual in the context of anthropological studies, see Gaenszle 2007: 4–9. Gaenszle basically views rituals as processes of differentiation that are oriented towards what is “more important or powerful”. In this sense, a ritual is in fact a process of transformation of a given state into a “better” one.

6 When I explained my research project to the late Gene Smith and asked for his advice, he wrote to me: “You need to go back to RA. Stein and be completely conversant with his work. The shadows are all there.”
More recently, Samuel published in English some stimulating articles about the epic and the cult of Gesar (Samuel 1992, 1994, 1996, 2005—his monograph about Shamanism and Buddhism in Tibet investigates the Gesar cult in relation to shamanism from an anthropological perspective), whilst Kornman wrote a comparative study of the Buddhist epic (Kornman 1995). In Tibet and also in China, the epic of Gesar has been the object of numerous studies, as early as in the thirties. At the end of the cultural revolution, the Bureau for Propaganda of the Chinese Communist Party of Qinhai Province asked the central authorities to ‘save the Gesar epic’. This was accepted and resulted in a major campaign of field research in the eighties and nineties. ‘Gesarology’ became a new branch of social science in China. Regarding the work achieved during this period, Yang Enhong, one of China’s most reputed Gesar specialists, mentions the collection of more than a million verses and twenty million words. Since then the epic of Gesar continues to be a core research topic of Tibetan studies in China.

Given the on-going and extensive interest in the Gesar epic, it is noteworthy that little attention has been given to the Gesar Vajrayāna rituals. Stein (1956, 1959) mentioned some texts pertaining to the practice of Gesar as a protector or a yidam but his pioneering efforts have not led to any noticeable academic research in this particular field.

According to Karmay,

‘The climax of the religious degeneration of the epic was reached at the end of the nineteenth century when ’Ju Mi-pham began to devote to it’

---

7 Unfortunately, I have not obtained a copy of this dissertation yet. I thought I should nonetheless mention it here. Also, Prof. Ramble just brought to my attention Fitzherbert’s dissertation about the Gesar epic at Oxford University as I was about to complete my work.

8 On the research about Gesar in China and its relationship with politics, see Maconi 2004: 389ff.

9 One of Mipham’s Gesar rituals has been partially translated (see Nālandā 1997).
volumes of *sādhana*, that is, texts containing rituals which in effect transforms the hero into a full Buddhist divinity. This was hardly an innovation, because we know that wherever Buddhism arrived it always tried to convert or transform the local and native spirits and then incorporate them into its pantheon. However, this religious development of the epic has happily remained apart from the main epic tradition.\textsuperscript{10}

The fact that such developments represent ‘the religious degeneration of the epic’ in any possible way seems debatable, but Karmay makes an important point here. Gesar, as a Buddhist yidam or *dharmapāla*, is a syncretic figure and Gesar rituals are relatively recent religious developments compared to the epic itself.\textsuperscript{11} As such, the Gesar of the Buddhist tantric rituals cannot be reduced to the Gesar of the Tibetan epic. The question therefore arises, who is Gesar, if not only an epic hero? Since there has not been any study of Gesar as a Buddhist protector invoked in Buddhist rituals, the aim of this study will be to understand the various aspects of Gesar in the rituals practiced in Tibet, Mongolia, and the West, following the diffusion of Vajrayāna out of its place of origin.

The starting point of the present enquiry is a ‘smoke offering’ (*bsangs*) to the King Gesar, the *bSam pa’i don grub ma*. It is an eight-folio manuscript acquired in Mongolia and kindly made available to me by Gezá Bethlenfalvy of the Hungarian Academy of Science. Since Karmay is quite right to stress the

\textsuperscript{10} Karmay 1998: 467.

\textsuperscript{11} Relying upon Bon sources to understand the most complex aspects of Gesar is methodologically sound: “By way of comparision [sic] we might now conclude that, even though the epic of Gesar has been covered with the dust of history and of certain religious factors, especially of Buddhism (because of the spread of Buddhism in Tibet and the adherence to this religion by the Tibetan people, including of course the folk artists themselves), a deeper study of Gesar and its origins has enabled us to unearth traces of Bon from its contents and forms of chanting.” (Yang 1993: 433).
importance of 'Ju Mipham’s role in the constitution of a corpus of practice texts dedicated to Gesar, we will also examine early Gesar rituals that have been composed prior to Mipham, together with some of Mipham’s most significant contributions. Most of these texts are occasionally relatively difficult to translate due to the technical rDzogs chen terminology, the obscure references made to the epic, and the extreme syntactic terseness of some verses. These features render many passages unclear, ambiguous, and sometimes totally opaque, particularly when this usual state of affairs becomes combined with scribal errors. The resulting textual vagueness is partly due to the nature of the rituals, which were intended for an audience familiar with both the epic and the corpus of rDzogs chen teachings, and certainly not meant for wide distribution. This explains why philological triangulation or cross-examination of a vast array of similar texts is necessary to bridge the unavoidable gaps.

Cabezón expresses well the situation in the Introduction to *Tibetan Ritual*:

> It is, of course, beyond the scope of this introduction to discuss even a single rite like empowerment in any detail, but this very brief overview at least conveys something of the complexity of a Tibetan tantric ritual. It also gives one a sense of its modular character. The relationship between the elements, the relative positions of the parts vis-à-vis one another, and the relationship between parts and wholes give rituals, I would contend, a *narrative quality*. Understanding this aspect of tantric ritual—its logic, or, perhaps more appropriately, its “storyline”—is an important part of understanding such rites. . . . Sometimes narrative elements are not explicit in the ritual itself, but
are rather presumed as part of the background lore that undergirds a liturgy: the “charter myths” that explain how certain spirits and deities came to have the powers that they do.\textsuperscript{12}

These charter myths running through the Gesar rituals are only partly originating from the Gesar epic itself. The rNying ma foundational myths, such as that of Samantabhadra, represent another essential element of their “storyline”.\textsuperscript{13} As such, understanding the “logic” of the Gesar rituals, as Cabezón puts it, requires a methodological approach that goes beyond the available written documents at our disposal. From the perspective of cultural anthropology, the indispensable philological analysis of Gesar rituals should be complemented by ‘observing participation’ due to the very nature of the Gesar practices and those of Tibetan Vajrayāna in general.\textsuperscript{14}

Our study of these texts will therefore include:

1. a catalog of early Gesar rituals;
2. an annotated bibliography of the secondary literature;
3. an edition and annotated translation of each selected text;
4. a detailed historical, philological, and anthropological presentation of the rituals.

\textsuperscript{12} Cabezón 2010: 17.
\textsuperscript{13} Such myths are sometimes explicitly found in the rituals. See for instance T. 12: 7–8 which refers to the myth of Rudra.
\textsuperscript{14} There are only three generations of Gesar practitioners between us and Mipham. Although the methods based on participant observation are synchronic, they “... can allow us to discover the existence of patterns of thought and behavior. Again, it will not help in completely understanding the distributions of characteristics, but it [participant observation] can assist in identifying patterns of thought and behavior.” (Dewalt 2002: 100).
### 2.2 Primary literature: A catalog of early Gesar rituals

The following texts are the result of a bibliographical search about Gesar rituals through Mipham (included) across the Tibetan Buddhist Research Center’s online database:¹⁵

**Text 1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>ge sar rdo rje tshe'i rgyal po'i gzhung dang man ngag gi skor bdud rtsi' bum bzang</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Lha rigs bde chen ye shes rol pa rtsal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>:nyams snang skyes bu ge sar rdo rje tshe rgyal gyi chos skor las:_srog gtad sgrub thabs srog 'khor bca' ba'i u pa de sha:_lha rigs chen po'i gzigs snang zer:_bla ma dbang chen he ru ka la bdud:_bdag 'dra zob hul phrin las rol pa rtsal:_sa 'brug sprel zla'i tshes bcu'i tho rangs char:_nyams rmis rmi lam shas che'i 'char sgo la:_nged rang khra 'brug gtsang khang dbus mar sleb:_gsang bdag bla ma bzhad pa'i rdo rje dang:_mjal ba de mtshams rang gi mdun thad du:_rmu thag yin rgyu'i sprin dkar zug pa'i sner:_skye bu ge sar rdo rje tshe rgyal:<em>skyabs mgon bzhad rje'i gzigs snang ge sar dang:</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>zhes ge sar skyes bu rdo rje tshe rgyal gyi chos bka' cha shas tsam 'di yang:_dge slong skal bzang nor bu dang/_stod phyogs kyi bya bral ba slob bu rab rgyas dang/_bla ma rdo rje dpal bzang ngam pa d+ma dbang phyug gis bskul ma mang stabs nyams snang gi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹⁵ Taken into account the vastness of Tibetan literature, this catalog is in spite of all our efforts merely an attempt to identify Gesar rituals and practice texts, without any pretense to be exhaustive. In the following tables, the underscore represents the Tibetan white space in accordance with the extended Wylie Transliteration Scheme.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publication</th>
<th>gling ge sar gyi sgrub skor Vol.1, 1a–5b¹⁶</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Additional</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bibliography</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 2**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>'dir dag snang chos skor las skyes bu ge sar dgra lha'i rgyal po'i gsang mdos dam can dgyes skong rtsa ba rdo rje tshe'i rgyal po'i gzhung dang man ngag gi skor bdud rtsi'i bum bzang</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Lha rigs bde chen ye shes rol pa rtsal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>zhes 'di'ang dag snang du byung ba'i ge sar gsang mdos kyi skor tso'o/ bdag 'dra lha rigs bde chen ye shes rol pas so/ ma ng+ga laM/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gling ge sar gyi sgrub skor Vol.1, 5b–8a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bibliography</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹⁶ This collection of Gesar rituals is entitled *Gling Gesar gyi sgrub skor* in Tibetan. The following bibliographical details are in English in the original: The Gling Gesar of Tibet and his Cult, Tibetan Texts Concerned with the Worship of the Epic Hero Compiled by the 8th Khamtul (Don-brgyud-Nyi-ma), Vol.I & II, Tashijong, 1971.
### Text 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>'dir dag snang chos skor las skyes bu ge sar dgra lha'i rgyal po'i gsang mdos dam can dgyes skong rtsa ba rdo rje tshe'i rgyal po'i gzhung dang man ngag gi skor bdud rtsi'i bum bzang</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Lha rigs bde chen ye shes rol pa rtsal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>zhes 'di'ang dag snang du byung ba'i ge sar gsang mdos kyi skor tso'o/ <em>/bdag 'dra lha rigs bde chen ye shes rol pas so/</em>/ma ng+ga laM/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gling ge sar gyi sgrub skor Vol.1, 1a–8a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Text 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>dgongs gter skyes mchog dgra lha'i rgyal po ge sar rdo rje tshe rgyal gyi srog gtad kyi chog sgrig rdo rje'i raM gdengs phrin las rol mtsho</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>mKhan chen ngag dbang dpal ldan rgya mtsho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>. . ./di la rig 'dzin chen po dpal chen mchog grub rgyal po'i dgongs gter ge sar skyes bu rdo rje tshe rgyal gyi srog gtad kyi cho ga nag 'gros su bkod pa la/_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>ces khyab bdag 'khor lo'i lha rig 'dzin chen po'am/<em>/dus 'babs dgongs gter rtsa gsum zhal lung las/</em>/bstan pa'i srung ma dgra lha'i rgyal po ge sar rdo rje tshe yi rgyal po'i srog gtad bskul ba'i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gling ge sar gyi sgrub skor Vol.1, 1a–13a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bibliography</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 5**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>seng chen nor bu dgra 'dul gyi bsangs mchod rdzogs ldan gsar pa'i lang tsho</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Khams sprul lnga pa sgrub brgyud nyi ma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>//na mo pa d+mAkAraye/_'dir rgyal ba snying rje'i dbang phyug 'phags mchog mig mi 'dzum pa dang/_o rgyan rgyal po po d+mA kA ra de dag gang 'dul sprul pa'i rol pa/_dgra lha'i rgyal po'i tshul 'dzin pa/_nges pa don gyi skyes bu/_seng chen nor bu dgra 'dul thabs shes zung 'jug yab yum 'khor bcas kyi bsangs gsol rgyan 'byer mdo tsam bkod par/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>de ltar seng chen nor bu dgra 'dul gyi bsangs gsol 'di bzhin/_rig pa bzo yi mchog 'dzin/_bslab gsum yon tan kun gysi mdzes pa dge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gling ge sar gyi sgrub skor Vol.1, 1a–5a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 6**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>'dir ge sar dgra lha'i rgyal po' bsangs mchod</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Khams sprul lnga pa sgrub brgyud nyi ma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>zhes ge sar dgra lha'i rgyal po'i bsangs mchod 'di bzhin/ rig 'dzin pa d+ma'i lung gis dbang bskur ba/ las rab bde chen rol pa rtsal gyis gnas bzang gru gu'i yang dben du bkod pa'/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gling ge sar gyi sgrub skor Vol.1, 1a–7a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 7**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>'dzam gling rgyal po' skyes mchog ge sar gyi g.yang 'bod bsang rabs dgra lha bstod pa bcas</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Khams sprul lnga pa sgrub brgyud nyi ma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>do rje gsang ba gsum gyi gzi brjid ni/_/nyi ma 'bum gyi snang bas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi mtshon pa/<em>/snang srid dbang sdud ye shes drwangs ma'i lha/</em>/pa d+ma ka ras deng 'dir dge legs rtsol/_/dir skyes mchog ge sar rgyal po' mchod bsang gi rim pa mdor bs dus byed par/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mos slobchos rgyal dbang po nas 'dzam gling ge sar gyal po'i mchod bsangs dgra lha bstod pa g.yang 'gugs bcas yod pa dgos zhes bskul ngor/_rig 'dzin pa d+ma'i byin rlabs cha tsam thob pa'i snang ba can/_s grub brgyud nyi ma'am las rab bde chen rtsal gyis ab yid shing 'brug zla 5 tshes 22 gaza tshes bkra shis dar ba'i nyin spel ba su dza ya//</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gling ge sar gyi s grub skor Vol.1, 7a–12a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 8**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ge sar skyes bu don grub rje:_bla ma yi dam ltar s grub pa:_dngos grub rol mtsho zhes bya: _shin tu gsang ba'i rgya can bzhugs:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Introduction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sangs rgyas thams cad 'dus pa'i sku:_pa d+ma rgyal po nyid la 'dud:_ye shes DA k+ki'i tshogs rnams kyis:_bka' yi gnang ba stsal du gsol:_gling rje ge sar rgyal po nyidH_bla ma ltar du s grub pa ni:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Colophon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e ma:_bod khams sangs rgyas bstan pa dar ba'i phyir:_bdud sde'i gyul bcom dgra gdon thal bar rlog:_slar yang rgyal bstan mi nub de srid du:_bstan pa skyongs shing 'gro don spyod pa yi:<em>khas blang dbugs 'byung gzengs bsod sa spyod gnas:</em>'dzin zhi ngang 'dul phrin las thabs mkhas pa:_ge sar skyes bu yi dam ltar s grub</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
thabs:_lha mo dngul dkar sgron mas brda' bskul ltar:_pa d+ma
gyal pos gsung zhing brda' ris bkod:_'di ni shin tu gsang bar bya
ba ste:_dam tshig mig 'bras ltar du gces spras byed:_chos kyi don
du rin chen srog gtong zhing:_slar yang dam tshig nyams par mi
'gyur bar:_yid ches las gzhan khyab gdal spel mi bya:_de yang lo
brgya'i bar du gsum brgyad do:_gling lha myur mgyogs mthu
rtsal rno ba dang:_chos 'di byin rlabs tshan kha che ba'i
phyir:_shin tu gsang bar byed pa srog gi rgya:_gsang thub dam
tshig ldan pa gang zhig la:_byin rlabs dngos grub rtags mtshan
mthong bar nges:_gnas pa'i phyogs kun bkra shis bde legs
'phel:_'di la kha na ma tho yod ma yin:_mi lo nyer gcig bar du
gsang rgya btab:_chos bdag DA k+ki ma yis brda khrol
zhing:_rigs ldan skyes bus bskul ba byung ba'i tshe:_dus mtha'i
gter smyon a tsar dmar po yis:_rin chen shel gyi shog dris ngos
nas phab:_'tshub slong gdug pa sna tshogs byung na yang:_yang
dag lha ba'i zil gyis non byas te:_snying stobs gnyan po'i dbang
du btang ba yin:_yi ge 'du byed nyer gnas ras bgyis:_pir gyi
kha bzhin sdom la nyams su longs:_gsang ma thub na chad pa
'byung ta re:_sa mA ya:_sku gsung thugs kyi rgya:_dam tshig gi
rgya:_srog gi rgya:_gu h+ya:_kha tham:_lha sras dgra lha rtse
rgyal gyi rnam spul khro chen mi dbang la yu ga ga'i mthan can
gyi nan tan chen pos la grangs nyer gcig gi bar dgongs gter gtan
la 'bebs dgos pa'i bskul ma byung ba dang:_chos bdag DA k+ki
mas brda' khrol ba bzhin sa mo lug lo da bo zla'i dmar phyogs
### Text 9

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>'dzam gling ge sar lha 'khor bsang: _bkra shis dpal gyi nyi ma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>pa d+ma thod phreng rtsal la 'dud:_'dzam bu'i gling la dbang gsyur zhing:_seng chen nor bu dgra 'dul gyi:_bsang mchod wer ma'i dgyes skong bstan:_bsang dang gser skyems 'du byas la:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>'dzam gling skyes bu'i bsang mchod sgrub:_bkra shis dpal gyi nyi ma 'di:_bdag 'dra pa d+ma thod phreng gis:_skal ldan rjes 'jug don du smras:_byin rlabs rno myur khyud 'phags pa:_gter smyon khrag 'thung rdo rjes pa d+ma'i gsung bzhin phab pa chos bdag rig pa'i ye shes kyis yi ger bkod pa'o:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gter chos Vol. VI, 515–520</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Text 10

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduction</strong></td>
<td>dpal chen he ru ka la 'dud: _'dzam gling dmag dpon chen po dgra 'dul rje:_bsang dang mchod pa'i rim pa ni:_dmar gtor rgyan ldan 'khor sum bcu:_kyu gu dar tshon zas snas brgyan:_phye mar skyems phud go mtshon bshams:_bsang gsur dud sprin 'khrigs byas la:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Colophon</strong></td>
<td>'di yang skyes mchog dgra 'dul gyi:_tshang rgyal don du smras pa bzhin:_nyams su blangs bas 'bras smin 'gyur:_gzhan la spel na 'khu ldog che:_gces par bzung la dam srung ba:_bde legs 'byung bar nga yis smras:_grub chen dz+nyA nas so/_dge'o/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publication</strong></td>
<td>gter chos Vol. VI, 521–524</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Additional Bibliography</strong></td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 11**

| **Title** | gling rje seng chen rgyal po'i sgo nas drag po' las sbyor: _nyams pa 'joms pa'i dug char |
| **Author** | rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje |
| **Introduction** | de la thog mar sbyor ba bshams bkod sogs drag po spyi mthun ltar bkod:_lta ba'i gdengs ma bral ngang nas sgrol bskul las la 'jug:_dang po ma nyes gz u dpang zhu ba ni: |
| **Colophon** | ces brjod par bya'o:_'di ltar ma byung bstan dgra sgrol ba'i las:_dus mtha'i sngags smy es pa rdo rje yis:_dkar phyogs bstod cing nag phyogs 'joms pa dang:_bstan pa spyi dang khyad par rang gi lugs:_pa d+ma'i thugs sras a b+ha'i mtshan can gyi: |
### Text 12

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publication</th>
<th>gter chos Vol. VI, 525–535</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Additional Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Title**
dgra 'dul seng chen rgyal po'i gtor bzlog bsdus pa gnam lcags mtshon gyi 'khor lo

**Author**
rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje

**Introduction**
-

**Colophon**
ces pa 'di yang dar mdo'i sprang ban ngas: grangs bsogs nyer mkhor dmigs rim nas shar mar la bris: sdang dgra cham la 'beb pa'i rgyur gyur cig: yi ge pa ni shes rab ming gis byas pa'o/ /dge zhing bkra shis/ _sa rba ma ng+ga laM/ /

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publication</th>
<th>gter chos Vol. VI, 537–540</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Additional Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>bzlog pa mi mthun gtor bar byed pa'i rlung nag 'tshubs ma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>de la 'dir thog mar sbyor ba bkod bshams sogs:<em>bzlog gtor spyi mthun ltar dang:</em>'khor sum cu'i grangs kyis dmar gtor gyis bskor mthar:_dregs pa yang 'khor mtshon byed kyu gu b+ha ling grangs mang gis bskor zhing:_rtsang mtshe dang srung ba zlog pa'i 'khor lo spyi mthun ltar 'jug pa dang:_khyung tsaka gtor gdugs kyis brgyan pa sogs:_gsang sngags spyi'i 'gro lugs bzhin grub rjes:<em>ka dag rig stong chos sku'i nga rgyal gyi ngang nas:<em>rol chen rkang gling rnga dang 'bud dkrol bya zhing:</em>'gugs 'dren dang bcas:</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>ces gtor chen me ho ma du brdab par bya'o:_ces pa 'di yang dar mdo'i sprang ban dgyes pa rdo rje'i ming des/_rang gi nyer gnas thub bstan rdo rjes ring mo zhig nas drag po spyi yi gtor bzlog nyung du zhig dgos zhes yang yang bskul ba'i rkyen byas skyabs rje thams cad mkhyen pa ye shes rol ba'i rdo rje'i dgongs gter gling lha sgrub thabs la stod las ma gtogs smad las med phyir 'di 'dra zhig rtsom snyams pa'i blos grogs byas nas glo bur kun rtog gi 'tshub slong dang cho 'phrul sna tshogs pa byung ba sogs khyad du bsad de/_skabs su bab pa ni rten 'brel gzang pos mtshams sbyor dang bcas/_spyir rgyal ba'i bstan pa rin po che dang/_khyad par zab gsang bla med kyi bstan pa'i gtsos dgos su rang lugs klong chen snying gi thig le'ichos srid mi nub pa'i rgyal mtshan pha mthar khyab cing der 'dzin gyi skyes bu rnamz kyi zhabspad</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
bskal brgyar bstan pa sogs bstan 'gro'i phan bde'i gsos su 'gyur ba'i mos blo bzang pos rnal 'byor khas dman gyi mgon skyabs dang/_bdud dgra'i kha gnon du gyur pa pa d+ma'i thugs sprul snyigs dus kyi lha skal dgra 'dul seng chen ma hA rA dza'i sgo nas gtor bzlog smad las dang bcas pa 'di nyid rtsom pa'i dbu me stag zla 12 tshes 3 la brtsams kyang mthar phyin ma nus nas rtsom mjug me yos zla 2 tshes 24 la a mdo'i sa yi cha mchog sprul dgu rong rin po che'i bzhugs gnas/_gnas mchog ma rir skyed tshal bkra shis nyams dgra'i gling nas legs grub bgyis pa 'di nyid zhal dro zhi ng laM/_oM swa sti/_dge legs 'dod 'byung yid kyis mkha' gsang las:_thabs shes dbyer med nyi zla'i dkyil 'khor rgyas:_bde chen dga' ba'i chu 'dzin ba gam 'khrigs:_zag med lhan skyes ye shes bdud rts'i char:_snying la ngom pa'i ya mtshan cir yang ston:_rmad byung chos kyi dri bsung legs par 'thul:_'gro la phan bde sbyor ba'i nor bu yis:_ma rung las ngan smag rum rgyun ring der:_bdag 'dzin 'joms pa'i 'od stong rab tu 'gyed:_bdag med rdo rje'i mtshon cha 'di 'dra legs:_snyigs pa'i yang mthar skyes pa'i rkang drug bdag:_gzugs 'ong ma ston bsam pa mkha' ltar yangs:_rgyal ba'i bstan pa'i pad tshal rab bzhad cing:_bstan dgra mi srun zhi ng sa tha ba ru:_log sbyor bsam pa'i tsher ma gzeng ba rnams:_byang sms bsil zil mchog gis ma thul ba:_drag po thabs kyis gzhoms pa'i dug char 'dis:_pa d+ma'i thugs sras kun mkhyen
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publication</th>
<th>gter chos Vol. VI, 541–557</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Additional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Text 14

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>ge sar skyes bu'i sgrub thabs yid bzhin dbang rgyal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>rdzogs rim spros med ngang du bzhag: dge legs 'phel/bkra</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

27
Text 15

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>dgra bla gling rje nor bu dgra 'dul gyi bstod bskul drang srong khros pa'i rngams glu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>de la 'dir ni thog mar bsang gsur dang: rkang gling thod rnga rol chen la sogs pa: spros bcas 'du byas spros med rnal 'byor gyis: yang dag lha ba'i nga rgyal ldan pa yis: dpal ldan bla ma rgyal ba kun 'dus rje: gling rje seng chen rgyal po'i ngo bo ru: db yer med dad gus gdung shugs drag po'i ngang: rngams pa'i dbyangs kyis 'di ltar brjod par bya:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>ces pa 'di yang dar mdo'i sprang ban ngas: rnga yab gling nas pa d+ma'i thugs las sprul: ma hA rA dza seng chen ge sar lha: khyod la dad cing bstod bskul 'di phul na: bdag sogs rnam mang sras po'i gter khang lhar: tshe bsod dpal gyi phyur bur gtams gyur te: dge legs rgya mtsho'i pha mthar byas pa dang: ma rung bstan dgra thal bar brlag pa sogs: bstan bgror 'dod 'byung yid bzhin dbang rgyal ltar: sa gsum skye dgu'i nyin or byed par shog: /rgyal ba rgyal mchog rgyal ba bdud las rgyal: /rgyal ba'i</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
rgyal sras rgyal dbang pa d+ma rgyal:_rgyal mthangs rgyal po
rgyal rigs gling rje rgyal:_rgyal bstan rgyal mthshan rgyal ba'i
zhing 'dir rgyal:_dge zhing bkra shis sa rba ma ng+ga laM/_/gzhi
rgyud bde gshegs snying po'i gshigs lugs gang/_/dmyal mes ma
tshig pre has ma phongs shing/_/dud 'gror ma 'thum lcam mo DA
k+ki ma/_/tshe 'dzin dbang mos yi ger ris su btabs/_/dge bas bdag
gzhan sngs rgyas sar 'god shog/_/bkra shis dpal 'bar 'dzam gling
rgyan gyur cig/_/dge'o/_/dge'o/_/dge'o/_/

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publication</th>
<th>gter chos Vol. VI, 561–570</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Additional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Text 16

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>ge sar lha 'khor sprul pa bcas:_dgra bla ltar du mchod sgrub thabs:_rngam chen 'bar ba</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>'gyur ba med pa rdo rje'i sku:<em>tshangs dbyangs yan lag drug cu'i gsung:</em>'khrul bral ye shes lnga ldan thugs:<em>rgyal kun gsang ba gsum la 'dud:</em>'dzam gling skyes mchog ge sar rje:_lha 'khor sprul ba yang sprul bcas:_dgra bla ltar du mchod pa'i thabs:_bstan no gus pas nyams su longs:_gtsang ma'i gnas su gzhi ma dkar mo'i steng du me tog bkram pa'i dbus su:_gtor ma ri rab bang rim bzhi khar nor bu mig gsum 'bar ba'i dbyings can gyi phyogs bzhir 'brang rgyas bzhi dang mtshaps bzhir lta bshos bzhi:_bang rim</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
gnyis pa la zhal zas bcug sum:_bzhi pa la kyu gu grangs med kyis
bskor ba:_g.yas phyogs su dkar zlum so gsum:_g.yon phyogs su
dmar gtor so gsum:_bshos bu bcug sum gzhan yang bsang rdzas
skyems phud sna tshogs gtsang mar sbyar ba bshams:_rtsi shing
sna tshogs dud pa btang la:_thog mar skyabs sems yan lag bdun
'bul ni:_

Colophon

rten 'brel snying po brjod cing shis brjod ci rigs bya'o:_bsngo ba
smon lam skabs dang sbyar ro:_mchod gtor rnams bsang nang du
bzhus shing 'bru sna sogs lhag ma kun mthar dor bya'o:_e
ma:_lho rgyal 'dzam gling spyi dang khyad par du:_dbu nag bod
la bka' drin che ba yi:_'dzam gling skyes mchog nor bu dgra 'dul
rje:_ bstan srung dgra bla ltar du mchod sgrub thabs:_rngams
chen 'bar ba kham gsum zil gnon 'di:_shel dkar me long brda ris
bkra ba la:_bsgyur zhing kha bskang dbyings kyi DA k+ki
ma'i:_gsung bzhin ma nor 'khrugs pa sde dba ste:_dad dam skal
ba ldan pa'i khyad chos mchog:_rang gi bcang na yid bzhin nor
las lhag:_khyab la spel na 'khu ldog gdug rtsub 'byung:_[ ]tshe
bsod dbang thang rlung rta dar rgyas dang:_kun gyis bla ru bkur
ba lta ci smos:_kham gsu zil gyis gnon pa'i dpal che:_lha 'dre mi
gsum srog gi bdag por 'gyur:_snying gi dkyil du chongs shig sa
ma yA:_bka' 'di dregs pa'i ded dpon tshogs la gtad:_thub par
srungs shig dam tshig srog gi rgya:_sa ma yA:_rgya rgya
rgya:_kha tham:_ gu h+ya:_dus mtha'i gter smyon khrag 'thung
las kyi dpa' bos gzugs med 'ga' dang gzugs can gling sprul ma hA
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publication</th>
<th>gter chos Vol. VII, 1–26</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Additional Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 17**

<p>| Title | 'dzam gling ge sar lha 'khor bsang:_bkra shis dpal gyi nyi ma |
| Author | rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje |
| Introduction | pa d+ma thod phreng rtsal la 'dud:_dzam bu'i gling la dbang sgyur zhing:_rgyal ba'i phrin las pho nya ba:_seng chen nor bu dgra 'dul gyi:_bsang mchod wer ma'i dgyes skong bstan:_bsang dang gser skyems 'du byas la: |
| Colophon | 'dzam gling skyes bu'i bsang mchod sgrub:_bkra shis dpal gyi nya ma 'di:_bdag 'dra pa d+ma thod phreng gis:_skal ldan rjes 'jug don du smras:_byin rlaus rno myur khyad 'phags so:_gter smyon khrag 'thung rdo rje rjes pa d+ma'i gsungs bzhin phab pa chos bdag rig pa'i ye shes kyis yi ger bkod pa'o:<em>dge'o/</em> |
| Publication | gter chos Vol. VII, 27–32 |
| Additional Bibliography | - |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>'dzam gling ge sar skyes bu don grub kyi: _rgyun bsang bstan dgra tshar gcod</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>pa d+ma 'thung sku la 'dud:_thod phreng las mkhan rgyal tshab rje:_skyes bu nor bu dgra 'dul gyi:_rgyun bsang bstan dgra tshar gcod ni:_rgyun ldan chab bran byas la:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>ces mchod do:_dregs pa'i srog bdag phrin las pho nya ba:_las dbang bsgyur ge sar skyes bu yi:_bsang dang gser skyems bstan dgra tshar gcod 'di:_yum chen tA re lha mos brda bkrol ltar:_khrag 'thung dpa' bo a tsar dmar yis:_dgongs gter nam mkha' mdzod kyi chos sde las:_phab bzhin shin tu byin rlabs tshan kha myur:_rang las gzhan pa'i lag tu shor ra re:_dgra dpung joms pa'i rdo rje'i tho ba ste:_rang mtshon mi lag ma shor dam par zung:_sa ma yA:_rgya:gu h+ya:shu b+haM:_yi ge 'du byed rig pa'i ye shes bgis:_zhal dro byin chags dge legs bkra shis 'phel:_lha lcam 'phags pa'i rnam 'phrul gyis ji ltar brung ba'i skabs dbye ba ltar:_gter chen rin po ches phag lo gsar shar zla ba dang po'i tshes gsum la gnang pa'o:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gter chos Vol. VII, 33–43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Text 19

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>dgra 'dul rje'i bsang mchod</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>dpal chen he ru ka la 'dud:_'dzam gling dmag dpon chen po dgra 'dul rje:_bsang dang mchod pa'i rim pa ni:_dmar gtor rgyan ldan 'khor sum cu:_sku gu dar mtshon zas snas brgyan:_phye mar skyems phud go mtshon bshams:_bsang gsur dud sprin 'khrigs byas la:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>'di yang skyes mchog dgra 'dul gyi:_tshang rgyal don tu smras pa bzhin:_nyams su blang ba'i 'bras smin 'gyur:_gzhan la spel na 'khu lngog che:_gcig pur bzung la dam srung ba:_bde legs 'byung bar nga yis smra:_grub chen dza nyA nas so/<em>dge'o/</em>/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gter chos Vol. VII, 45–47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Text 20

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>yang gsang thugs thig cha lag las:_dgra bla'i rgyal po'i bsang mchod</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>khrag 'thung drag po'i sku la 'dud:_dzam gling zo dor kun gyi gtso:_gter gyi srung ma dam tshig can:_gnyan gyi rgyal po 'khor dang bcas:_bsang mchod bya ba'i rim pa ni:_shing rtsi phye mar sman spos bsregs:_zas sna gser skyems phud rgod bshams:_lha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gyad kyi ngar ldan pas:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zo dor tso bo gnyan gyi rgyal po 'di:_ pa d+ma'i las mkhan gsang sngags gter srung mchog:_ bskal mang gong nas bdag dang las kyis 'brel:_srid gsum 'gren zla bral ba'i lha yin te:_ngo srung zas phyir mi 'brangs tha tshig btsan:_bsang mchod zho 'thung rus pa'i mtshon cha 'di:_dur mo chu lo dbo zla'i tshes bcu la:_gnyan gyi rgyal pos gzugs bstan bskul ba dang:<em>DA k+ki'i bka' byung dbang mos 'brel bsgrigs:</em>'od dkar nya rgyas yar tshes dge ba la:_khrag 'thung las kyi rdo rjes gsang mdzod brdol:_yang gsang thig le skor gsum cha lag go:_dam med nyams su blangs na srog la bsdig:_dam ldan srog ltar bsrung ba'i skal bar shog:_yi ge'i 'du byed rig pa'i ye shes bgyis:<em>dge legs 'phel/</em>/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Publication |
| gter chos Vol. VII, 69–77 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Additional</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bibliography</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 21</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yang gsang thugs thig cha lag las:_gter srung dgra bla'i bsang mchod gnam lcags hog rgod</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Author |
| rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje |

| Introduction |
| khrag 'thung he ru ka la 'dud:_ yang gsang thig le skor gsum gyi:_gsang ba'i bka' srung gnyer 'dzin che:_drag rtsal thogs med mchod pa'i thabs:_phye mar zas sna shing rtsi bsang:_'bru sna phye phud legs pas bshams: |
| Colophon | gser skyems phyogs beur 'thor bar bya: d+ma kA ra'i gnyer 'dzin che: khrag 'thung dpa' bo'i dgra lha'i rgyal: rdo rje phag mo'i pho nya ba: gsang ba'i bka' srung mchod pa'i thabs: khrag 'thung las kyi dpa' bo yi: nam mkha' mdzod kyi chos sde las: DA k+ki'i dgyes pa skong phyi phul: dam med lag tu shor ra re: rno myur gnas lugs thog dang 'dra: thig le skor gsum chos 'di la: nyin re lan bdun 'khor bar nges: yi ge'i rig pa'i ye shes bgyis: zhal dros phrag yangs las myur ro/ /dge'o/ _// |
| Publication | gter chos Vol. VII, 79–85 |
| Additional | - |
| Bibliography | - |

**Text 22**

| Title | dgra bla gnod sbyin chen po'i mchod sgrub srog gi ka ba/ |
| Author | rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje |
| Introduction | |
| Colophon | |
| Publication | gter chos Vol. VII, 547–560 |
| Additional | - |
| Bibliography | - |

**Text 23**

| Title | ge sar skyes bu don 'grub kyi sgrub thabs grub gnyis dpyid ster las bzhi lhun grub |
| Author | mChog gyur gling pa |
Introduction

na mo pa d+ma va dz+ra ye/ /[ ]dpal ldan sangs rgyas pa d+ma
skyes/ /[ ]kun mkhyen ye shes mdzod [ ]'dzin pa/_/rgyal po sgyu
'phrul che ba'i mchog/_/bla ma ge sar rgyal la 'du debacle yang
sprul pa'i gter 'gro 'dul mchog gyur bde chen gling pa'i dgongs
pa'i klong nas brdol ba'i ge sar skyes bu'i sgrub thabs 'di nyid
nyams su len par 'dod pas/_/gnas dben par sgrub rten sku gsung
thugs rten spyi dang bye brag/_/gtor ma rin chen 'bar ba/_/sman
raka/_/nyer spyod sogs 'dod yon sna tshogs kyi mchod pa cas
dang/_/gsham gyi bya ba nams so so'i mos pa ltar 'dor len
rnam/_/khyab gzhig gang byed kyi yo byad bdogs la/

Colophon

ces 'dod gsal sprul pa'i rdo rje'i shis brjod dag snang ma 'dis mjug
bsdus te rol mo bya'o/_/ra'u sgrung mkhan a rmye gzhon nus ring
mo nas bskul ba'i ngor/_/mchog gyur gling pas mdo khams byang
rgyud shar zla dal gyis 'babs pa'i 'gram skyes bu chen po 'khrungs
pa'i yul/_/phu nu sum cu'i sras mkhar gyi zhol/_/dur stag thang
khra mor rab byung bco lnga pa'i mgo bo yos lo sprel zla ba'i
dmar phyogs mkha' 'gro 'du ba'i dus chen nyid gtan la phab nyid
char grub pa'i rnal 'byor shes rab rdo rje'i gsung bskul mdzad pas
gzhung rtsa bar gong 'og gsal byed kha skongs phran bu dang
tshogs bskang nyid rdo rje'i gsung byin rlabs can nams nas btus
te gter chen mchog gyi cod pan 'chang ba pa d+ma kun khyab ye
shes snying pos bris pa sa rba ma ng+ga laM///

Publication

yi zab gter yid bzhin nor bu'i chos mdzod chen mo Vol. XXXIV,
379–399
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Additional Bibliography</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Text 24**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Title</strong></th>
<th>dag snang ge sar skyes bu don 'grub kyi dbang chog phrin las kun khyab</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduction</strong></td>
<td>na mo ma hA gu ru we/_tshul 'di'i rjes gnang bya bar 'dod pas gnas khang rgyan gyis spras pa'i gung du gzung mthun rten gyi mdun phyogs la gong du rngul tshon spyi dang 'dra ba'i khar dbus su thugs sgrub kyi dpal gtor dang/_mdun du dpal gtor gtso 'khor dgu pa/_rtser sku tsaka dar gdugs can/_sngags byang/_phyag mtshan rnam sbsams/_gtor mchod kyis bskor la bdag mdun/_bzlas pa g.yang sgrub bcas grub pa dang/_bsang gser skyems bcas byas la/_snod rung gi slob ma bos te khrus nas dbyung/_bgegs bskrad srong 'khor bsgoms te/_lo rgyus kyi khyad nga ra/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Colophon</strong></td>
<td>ces pa'ang dus bab kyi lha srung khyad par can 'di rtsod dus kyi rgud pa'i gnyen po ched du bsngags shing khyad par snga 'gyur ba'i ring lugs 'dzin pa rnam kyi bsten 'os mchog tu gyur pas gter 'byin grub thobs cad kyi rgyal po'i gsungs 'di la dbang zhig dgos zhes theg mchog 'gyur med gling gsum pa'i sku gsung thugs kyi rigs sras sku mched nas nan bskul gnang ba bzhin bla ma dang lhag pa'i lhar gsol ba btab ste byi brlabs kyi snang bas rung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>yi zab gter yid bzhin nor bu’i chos mdzod chen mo Vol. XXXIV, 401–410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 25**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>ge sar skyes bu don ’grub dang/_rje yi mgul lha bcu gsum gyis gtsos gzhi gnas bdag po rnams la gsol mchod kyi rim pa ’dod don phrin las myur ’grub ces bya ba</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>ces ra’u a rme sgrung mkhan gyis bskul ba’i ngor/_mchog gyur gling pas bris pa dge/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>yi zab gter yid bzhin nor bu’i chos mdzod chen mo Vol. XXXVII, 257–263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Text 26**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>seng chen nor bu dgra 'dul gyi bsang mchod ni/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>zhes pa mchog gyur gling pas 'phrul du bris/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>yi zab gter yid bzhin nor bu’i chos mdzod chen mo Vol. XXXVII, 263–263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 27**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>zhes pa ra’u sgrung mkhan a rme gzhon nu'i ring mo nas bskul ba’i ngor/_mchog gyur gling pas mdo khams byang rgyud shar zla dal gyis 'bab pa’i 'gram skyes bu chen po sku 'khrungs pa’i yul/<em>phu nu sum cu’i gsas mkhar gyi zhol/</em>’dur stag thang khra mor rab byung bco lnga pa’i mgo bo yos lo sprel zla ba’i dmar phyogs kyi mkha’ ’gro’du ba’i dus chen la bris pa dge/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>yi zab gter yid bzhin nor bu’i chos mdzod chen mo Vol. XXXVII, 263–266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Text 28

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>ces 'di yang ra'u sgrung mkhan a rme gzhon nu'i ring mo nas bskul ba'i ngor/_mchog gyur gling pas mdo khams byang rgyud shar zla dal gyis 'bab pa'i 'gram/_skyes bu chen po 'khrungs pa'i yul/<em>phu nu sum cu'i gsas mkhar gyi zhol/</em>'du ra stag thang khra mor/_rab byung bco lnga pa'i gnam lo gsar du shar ba yos lo sprel zla ba'i dmar phyogs kyi mkha' 'gro 'du ba'i dus chen la bris pa dge/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>yi zab gter yid bzhin nor bu'i chos mdzod chen mo Vol. XXXVII, 266–268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Text 29

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>brtse chen drang srong smon lam las/_grub pa'i mthu stobs rdo rje nyid/_gzigs pa'i lha min bdud 'joms pa'i/_dpa' bo thod phreng rtsal la 'dud/_de yang dpal chen po dang pa d+ma dbang gis dam la btags shing bstan pa srung bar zhal gyis bzhes pa rje yi mgul lha bcu gsum la gsol mchod 'dod pas/_zhi bar dkar gtor bcu gsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dar mdung gis brgyan pa/_drag por dmar gtor bcu gsum ru</td>
<td>ces gtor rten 'dzug byed dam gtsang sar phul nas ga tshas rang gnas su gshegs/_rdzes kyi bya ba spyi ltar spyad 'di ltar don brgyud 'brug pa'i ring lugs pa/_ske tshang sprul sku chos kyi snying po yi zhag sa mang por rjes byon dkar spyad kyi/_nan tan chen pos bskul mdzad bzhed don ltar/_stag sham rdo rje'i gter byon khrungs byas nas/_tsha sgang sgrol ma brag gi gnas zhol du/_rang lo so bdun glang lo khrums zla bar/_phyogs kun rgyu ba'i sngags 'chang ral pa can/_mchog gyur bde chen gling pas bris pa dge/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>Publication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ces gtor rten 'dzug byed dam gtsang sar phul nas ga tshas rang gnas su gshegs/_rdzes kyi bya ba spyi ltar spyad 'di ltar don brgyud 'brug pa'i ring lugs pa/_ske tshang sprul sku chos kyi snying po yi zhag sa mang por rjes byon dkar spyad kyi/_nan tan chen pos bskul mdzad bzhed don ltar/_stag sham rdo rje'i gter byon khrungs byas nas/_tsha sgang sgrol ma brag gi gnas zhol du/_rang lo so bdun glang lo khrums zla bar/_phyogs kun rgyu ba'i sngags 'chang ral pa can/_mchog gyur bde chen gling pas bris pa dge/</td>
<td>yi zab gter yid bzhin nor bu’i chos mdzod chen mo Vol. XXXVII, 268–273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 30**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>zhes pa 'di yang mchog gyur bde chen gling pas spel pa'o/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>yi zab gter yid bzhin nor bu’i chos mdzod chen mo Vol. XXXVII, 273–274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 31**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>ces pa mchog gyur gling pas nye bar mgo phyir tsha sgang sgrol ma ri khrod zhol e waM chos sgar du glang lo khrums zla ba’i bco Inga'i nyin bris pa dge/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>yi zab gter yid bzhin nor bu’i chos mdzod chen mo Vol. XXXVII, 274–277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 32**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>zhes pa 'di ni gan gzhung gi/_a rgod sngags 'chang gyis bskul ngor/_phyogs kun rgyu ba’i mchog gling gis/_glang lo khrums zla’i bco Inga la/_tsha sgar sgrol ma’i ri khrod zhol/_e waM chos sgar nas spel lo/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>yi zab gter yid bzhin nor bu'i chos mdo chen mo Vol. XXXVII, 277–281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 33**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>bstan srung dpon gyi rgyal gyi gsal mchod</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>zhes pa 'di ni ri bo che rtse bla brang gi mdo chen dga' rgyal mtsan nas gsum nor mchog gyur gling pas bris pa dge legs 'phel/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>yi zab gter yid bzhin nor bu'i chos mdo chen mo Vol. XXXVII, 281–284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Bibliography</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 34**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>zhes pa 'di ni ri bo che rtse bla brang gi mdo chen dga' rgyal mtsan nas gsum nor mchog gyur gling pas bris pa dge legs 'phel/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>yi zab gter yid bzhin nor bu'i chos mdo chen mo Vol. XXXVII,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Text 35

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>zhes pa 'di ni pu ri dgon gyi dge bshes shes rab chos 'phel gyis bskul ngor/_ mchog gyur gling pas mkha' 'gro 'bum rdzong gi gnas nang du bris pa dge/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>yi zab gter yid bzhin nor bu'i chos mdzod chen mo Vol. XXXVII, 286–287</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Additional Bibliography

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 36</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Colophon</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publication</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Additional Bibliography</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 38</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Colophon</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Colophon</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publication</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Additional Bibliography</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Colophon</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publication</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Additional Bibliography</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Text 41

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>/mchod rdzas bshams/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>gter chen mchog gyur gling pas mthong gro lha khang nas dkor bdag zhal gzigs skabs bris pa'o/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>yi zab gter yid bzhin nor bu'i chos mdzod chen mo Vol. XXXVII, 305–307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Additional Bibliography</strong></td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Text 42

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>/na mo pa d+ma kAra ye/_/gnas srung chen po stags lha me 'bar gyi gsol mchod ni/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>sri'u gson sku gzugs rngams 'jigs dang ldan pa bris la khyim la btags zhes gnas srung sgrub pa dge 'dun rgya mtshos bskul ngor/_mchog gyur bde chen gling pas sbyar ba dge gyur cig//sa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Text 43: ge sar skyes bu chen po'i gsol mchod rdzogs ldan sprin gyi rol mo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>'Jam dbyang mkhyen brtse dbang po</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>/na mo gu ru pa d+mA kA rA ya/<em>/&quot;dir o rgyan chen po'i bka'nyan/</em>/bod yul yongs kyi dgra lha ge sar skyes bu chen po la gsol mchod bya bar 'dod na/_/gtor ma skyems phud bsang gsur sog s ji ltar 'byor ba'i yo byad mams la dmigs te/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>/ces pa'ang gzhan la phan po'i sgo cung zad mthong ltar/_/mtsho skyes bla ma dgyes pa'i 'bangs mkhyen brtse'i dbang pos gang shar bris pa dge legs kyi don kun lhun gyis grub pa'i rgyur gyur cig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gling ge sar gyi sgrub skor Vol.1, 1a–2b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Text 44

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>sku rje ge sar rgyal po'i gsol mchod shin tu bsdus pa bkra shis kyi sgra dbyangs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>'Jam dbyang mkhyen brtse dbang po</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>/na mo gu ru pa d+mA kA rA ya/_/mchod gtor gser skyems bsang sog s ji ltar 'byor ba'i mchod rdzas/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Text 45

**Title**

sku rje ge sar bsangs mchod dgos ’dod char ’bebs

**Author**

’Jam mgon kong sprul blo gros mtha’ yas

**Introduction**

/oM swa sti/_pa d+ma'i bka' sdod gling rje ge sar gsol zhing mchod par ’dod pas/_gtor ma gser skyems sogs ji ltar ’os pa’i mchod rdzas dang bsangs kyi yo byad ’du byas/_byin rlabs spyi mthun nam ’bru gsum brjod pas bsangs sbyangs spel la dbyangs rol bcas ’di skad do/

**Colophon**

/ces pa'ang rdo rje ’chang pa d+ma'i mtshan can gyis sku zhi bar gshegs kha rang du rten ’brel dang dgos pa zhig yod pas dgra lha'i bsangs snyan ’jeb gang che'i tshig tshogs can zhig ’phral du thon dgos zhes lha rdzas dang bcas te dgyes pa chen pos bka' yi bskul ba ltar ka rma ngag dbang yon tan rgya mtshos de ’phral nyid du bsam gtan skyil bur bris pa dge legs ’phel//_mang+galaM//

**Publication**


### Text 46

**Title**

’dzam gling gi rgyal po ge sar gsol mchod bsam don myur ’grubs

**Author**

Nyag bla pa d+ma bdud ’dul
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Introduction</th>
<th>-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Colophon</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>nyag bla pad+ma bdud 'dul gyi gter chos skor gesar, Vol.1, 455–457</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 47**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>rig pa 'gyur med ye shes kyi skyes bu chen po'i bla ma'i rnal 'byor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Stein 1959: 71 &amp; Schuh 1973: 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 651–654</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 48**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>ngo mtshar rtogs brjod brda' gsang nor bu'i me long</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Stein 1959: 71 &amp; Schuh 1973: 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 654–656</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 49**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>hor 'dul gsol 'debs dpa' bo'i gad rgyang</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Stein 1959: 71 &amp; Schuh 1973: 145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 656–658</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 50**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>ge sar skyes bu chen po rdo rje tshe rgyal gyi bskang gsol 'dod</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Text 51</td>
<td>dgu myur 'grub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Stein 1959: 72 &amp; Schuh 1973: 145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi) Vol.V, 658–667</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 52</th>
<th>wer ma'i gsol lo chen po'i bro yis las mtha' shin tu zab pa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Schuh 1973: 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi) Vol.V, 667–668</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 53</th>
<th>ge sar rgyal po la bsten nas lcag tshan yid bzhin nor bu sgrub pa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Stein 1959: 72 &amp; Schuh 1973: 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi) Vol.V, 669–672</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 54</th>
<th>ge sar rgyal po'i g.yang sgrub yid bzhin nor bu bsam 'phel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Stein 1959: 72 &amp; Schuh 1973: 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi) Vol.V, 669–672</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text 55</td>
<td>Text 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
<td>ge sar rgyal po'i g.yang gug srid zhi'i dwangs bcud sdud pa'i nor bu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publication</strong></td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 672–678</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text 59</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
<td>snang gsal wer ma'i bsang mchod kun gsal nor bu'i me long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
<td>Stein 1959: 72 &amp; Schuh 1973: 149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publication</strong></td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 686–687</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 60</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publication</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 61</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publication</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 62</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 64</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Publication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 65</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Publication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ma sang dgra grub</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
<td>Schuh 1973: 150</td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 699–701</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 66</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>phud mchod phywa g.yang sprin chen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text 67</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
<td>dgra ’dul nor bu'i snying tig</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
<td>Stein 1959: 72 &amp; Schuh 1973: 151</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publication</strong></td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi) Vol.V, 702–703</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 68</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publication</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 69</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publication</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 70</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 71**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>ge sar gsol 'debs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham nam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Schuh 1973: 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi) Vol.V, 708–709</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 72**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>ge sar rgyal po'i gsol mchod</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham nam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Stein 1959: 73 &amp; Schuh 1973: 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi) Vol.V, 708–709</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 73**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>ge sar nor sgrub man ngag</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham nam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Stein 1959: 73 &amp; Schuh 1973: 152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi) Vol.V, 709–710</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 74**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>ge sar srog gi 'khor lo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham nam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Schuh 1973: 152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung ’bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 710–711</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 75**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>gsang ba lha mo sgrub pa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Schuh 1973: 152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung ’bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 711–711</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 76**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>ge sar rgyal po'i bdang sdud</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Stein 1959: 73 &amp; Schuh 1973: 152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung ’bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 712–712</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 77**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>wer ma'i lha bsang ring mo dgra bla'i dpa' glu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Stein 1959: 73 &amp; Schuh 1973: 152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung ’bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 712–717</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Text 78**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Schuh 1973: 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung ’bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 717–722</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Text 79

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>pho lha yo bcos</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Schuh 1973: 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 722–723</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Text 80

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Schuh 1973: 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 723–724</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Text 81

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Schuh 1973: 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 724–725</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Text 82

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>seng chen ge sar nor bu'i gsol mchod phrin las lhun grub</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Stein 1959: 73 &amp; Schuh 1973: 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 725–728</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text 83</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
<td>ge sar gsol bsdus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
<td>Stein 1959: 73 &amp; Schuh 1973: 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publication</strong></td>
<td>gsung ’bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 728–728</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 84</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publication</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 85</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publication</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 86</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publication</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text 87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publication</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 88</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
<td>Mi pham ram rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
<td>Stein 1959: 73ff. &amp; Schuh 1973: 156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publication</strong></td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 761–763</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 89</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
<td>Mi pham ram rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
<td>Stein 1959: 74 &amp; Schuh 1973: 156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publication</strong></td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 765–765</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text 90</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
<td>'dzam gling dung zla dkar po 'bum pa rgya tsha zhal dkar gyi phrin las rdo rje'i rlung shugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author</strong></td>
<td>Mi pham ram rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publication</strong></td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 767–769</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Text 91

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>sga bde'i gsal bsdus dgra bgegs dpung 'joms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Stein 1959: 74 &amp; Schuh 1973: 157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 771–772</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Text 92

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>ge sar rgyal po'i g.yang bod phywa g.yang 'gugs pa'i lcags kyu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Stein 1959: 74 &amp; Schuh 1973: 157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>gsung 'bum (Kazi)Vol.V, 773–776</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.3 Secondary literature—annotated bibliography

Allen 2002

Bäcker 1986

Balikci 2008
Anna Balikci, *Gurus, Shamans and Ancestors*, Brill, Leiden/Boston, 2008—Considers the relationship
between dharma, shamanism, and spirit cults in Sikkim.

Barron 2005

Beer 2000

Beer 2003
Robert Beer, The Handbook of Tibetan Buddhist Symbols, Serindia, Chicago/London, 2003—Presents the various outer, inner, and secret offerings and symbols used in Tibetan Buddhism.

Bellezza 1997
John Vincent Bellezza, Divine Dyads—Ancient Civilizations in Tibet, Library of Tibetan Works & Archives, Dharamsala, 1997—Analyzes the deities of the mountain and lake with regard to their mythology, nature, and function in Tibetan history and religion.

Bellezza 2005
John Vincent Bellezza, Spirit-mediums, Sacred Mountains and Related Bon Textual Traditions in Upper Tibet, Brill, Leiden-Boston, 2005—Studies various mountain deities and their rituals in the Bon
texts. Examines—inter alia—the similarities between sgra blas and mountain deities.

Bellezza 2008

Presents in great detail the culture of Zhang Zhung with regard to religion, political organization, and textual traditions. Contains an index of places, deities, demons, spirits, historical and legendary human personalities, Tibetan religious and cultural terms.

Berounský 2009

Daniel Berounský, “Soul of the Enemy” and Warrior Deities (dgra bla): Two Tibetan Myths on Primordial Battle. In: Mongolica-Tibetica Pragensia ’09, Vol 2.2, Publication of Charles University in Prague Philosophical Faculty, Institute of South and Central Asian Studies, Seminar of Mongolian Studies, Prague, 2009—Represents the most complete study of the term dgra lha to date.

Bethlenfalvy 2003


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Publisher</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Blondeau 2002</td>
<td><em>Les Ma mo: mythes cosmogoniques et théogoniques dans le rnyin ma’i rgyud ’bum</em>. In: Eimer/Germano 2002: 293–311—<em>Presents the rNying ma cosmological myths in relation with the Ma mo concept.</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Boord 2002


Buffetrille 2000


Buffetrille 2004a


Buffetrille 2004b

apotropaic ritual based on an offering of games, entertainment, and songs to the deities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Publisher</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Association for Tibetan Studies, Ed. Krasser, Much, Steinkellner & Tauscher, VÖAW, Wien, 1997—Explores the logic of the liberation of hostile forces, obstacle-makers, and rudras by means of ritual killing in the context of the rNying ma tradition.


| Cuevas 2010 | Bryan J. Cuevas, *The “Calf’s Nipple” (Be’u bum) of Ju Mipham (Ju Mi pham).* In: Cabezón 2010: 165– |
186—Presents Mipham’s handbook about magic rites, *Las sna tshogs pa’i sngags kyi be’u ’bum*.

**Dagyab 1992**

Loden Sherap Dagyab, *Buddhistische Glückssymbole im tibetischen Kulturraum*, Eugen Diederichs Verlag, Munich, 1992—Describes the main Tibetan symbols of good fortune.

**Dagyab 2002**


**Dargyay 1988**


**Dargyay 1991**


**David-Néel/Yongden 1992**


Doctor 2005  Andreas Doctor, *Tibetan Treasure Literature*, Snow Lion Publications, Ithaca, NY, 2005—*Investigates the Tibetan gter ma literature, in particular the works of mChog gyur gling pa.*


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author/Year</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Publisher/Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Epic 1979–84</td>
<td>The Epic of Gesar: <em>'dzam gling Gesar rgyal po'i rtogs brjod sna tshogs gtam gyi phreng ba</em>, 31 Volumes</td>
<td>Kunsang Tobgyel, Thimphu, 1979–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1984—*Presents various narratives of the Gesar epic in Tibetan with foreword, preface and introduction in English.*

**Epstein 2002**

Lawrence Epstein (ed.), *Khams pa Histories*, Proceedings of the Ninth Seminar of the International Association for Tibetan Studies, Leiden 2000, Brill, Leiden/Boston, 2002—*Considers the history of Khams, the region from which the Gesar rituals of the ris med movement originate.*

**Farkas/Tibor 2002**

János Farkas-Tibor Szabó, *The Pictorial World of the Tibeto-Mongolian Demons*, Mandala & Librotrade, Budapest, 2002—*Describes various kinds of demons on the basis of various iconographic documents such as images and thangkas.*

**Fitzherbert 2009**


**Francke 1902**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>


Epensymposiums des Sonderforschungsbereichs 12

Heissig 1983
Walther Heissig, *Geser-Studien*, Westdeutscher Verlag, Opladen, 1983—*Studies various aspects of the Geser epic in Mongolia. Of particular interest for the comprehension of some references made in the rituals was the chapter about weapons and horses.*

Heissig 1993

Heissig 2002

Helffer 1977
the epic in general and the orality of the Gesar narrative tradition in particular by documenting the various cantos and their respective melodies.

Helffer 1982
Studies the orality of the epic through the various melodies sung by bards from Khams.

Helffer 1994
Mireille Helffer, mchod rol, Les instruments de la musique tibétaine, CNRS Editions, Paris, 1994—
Describes the Tibetan music instruments used in rituals.

Hermanns 1955
Matthias Hermanns, Mythologie der Tibeter, Athenaion, Germany, 1955.

Hermanns 1965
Matthias Hermanns, Das National-Epos der Tibeter Gling König Gesar, Verlag Josef Habbel, Regensburg, 1965—Represents one of the ‘root-texts’ for the study of the epic. See above the introduction of our study.

Herrmann 1988
analysis of the literary epic in relation with the various oral traditions told by bards.

Herrmann 1991

Hoffmann 1950

Horwitz 1993

Huber 1999

Hummel 1974
Determines who Gesar’s protectors, named the ‘Three sisters’, represent in a Mongolian version of the epic.

Hummel 1993
Siegbert Hummel, Mythologisches aus Eurasien im Ge-sar-Heldenepos der Tibeter, Fabri Verlag, Ulm, 1993—Establishes connections between the Gesar epic and various Eurasian myths.

Ihara 1992

Imogenov 1995

Jacobson 2007

Jiacuo 1994
Jiangbian Jiacuo, An Investigation of Gesar’s Arrow Divination (Gesar mdav-mo). In: Kvaerne 1994: 403–407—Explains the Gesar arrow divination and lists the various types of divinations connected with Gesar in the broader context of the various methods of divination used in Tibet.
| Jovic 2010 | Nika Jovic, *The Cult of the 'Go ba’i lha Inga*, Diplomarbeit (MA thesis), University of Vienna, 2010—*Gives a translation and detailed analysis of a text about the cult of the five personal deities ('go ba’i lha)*. |
| Kapstein 2000 | Matthew Kapstein, *The Tibetan Assimilation of Buddhism*, Oxford University Press, Oxford, 2000—*Contains a fascinating account of rNying ma foundational myths such as those of Rudra and Samantabhadra*. |
| Karmay 1993a | Samten G. Karmay, *The Wind-Horse and the Well-Being of Man*. In: Charles Ramble et al. (eds.), Proceedings of the International Seminars on the Anthropology of Tibet and the Himalaya, Ethnographic Museum of the University of Zurich Sept. 21–28 1990, 1993: 150–157—*Reviews various issues pertaining to the rlung rta rituals, such as the* |
etymology or the myths at the basis of the ritual.

Analyzes rlung rta in the context of the Gesar cult.

Karmay 1993b

Karmay 1994

Karmay 1998

Karmay 2003
classes of gods and demons. Gives some important precisions regarding concepts such as sku bla.

Karmay 2005
*Studies various aspects of the Bon and pre-Buddhist folk religions.*

Karmay 2010

Kaschewsky/Tsering 1972
*Contains indices about people, places, and deities, as well as a glossary.*

Kelényi 2003

Kirkland 1982
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Publisher</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>


Lin 2005a  Shen-yu Lin, *Mipham’s Systematisierung von gTo-Ritualen*, IITBS, Halle, 2005—Studies and translates a large number of Mipham’s gTo rituals.


Lopez 1997  Donald S. Lopez (ed.), *Religions of Tibet in Practice*, Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ,
1997—Contains various articles about Tibetan rituals, three of them being related to Gesar.

Macdonald/Tsering 1979  

Maconi 2004  

Martin 2010  
Dan Martin, Zhangzhung dictionary. In: RET 18, 2010: 5–253—Contains a dictionary of Zhang zhung terms as well as some introductory remarks and a detailed bibliography about the grammar and the origin of the Zhanzhung language.

Martin du Gard 1985  

Matisoff 2001  


*Represents the most complete research to date about Tibetan gods, deities, demons, and their cult.*

Norbu 1997 Namkhai Norbu, *Drung, Deu and Bön*, Library of Tibetan Works and Archives, New Delhi, Repr.,
1997—Gives a detailed account of the pre-Buddhist cultural and religious background of ancient Tibet.

NorbuJ 1971

Jamyang Norbu (ed.), *Kha gling and dMyal gling, Two Episodes from the Gesar Epic Cycle Recounting the King of Ling’s Conquest of the Khache and of hell*, New Delhi, 1971—Contains editions of two more recent chapters of the epic. Gives bibliographical information in the preface about the gter ston at the origin of the dMyal episode.

Orofino 1994


Penner 2009


Françoise Pommaret, *Maîtres des trésors (gter bdag)*. In: Blondeau 1998: 79–98—Presents the gter bdag deities such as Zo ra ra skyes.


Karma Phuntsho, *‘Ju Mi pham rNam rgyal rGya mtsho. His Position in the Tibetan Religious Hierarchy and a Synoptic Survey of his Contributions*. In: The Pandita and the Siddha, Ed. Ramon N. Prats, Amnye Machen Institute,
Dharamsala, 2007—Evaluates Mipham’s contribution to Tibetan Buddhism and Literature.

rGya mtsho 1991

Ramble 1998

Rintchen 1958

Ruegg 1991

Ruegg 1995
the relation between the secular and the spiritual in India and Tibet from a Buddhist perspective. Suggests a French translation for the term yon mchod.

Ruegg 2008


Samuel 1992


Samuel 1993


Samuel 1994

Geoffrey Samuel, *Gesar of gLing, Shamanic Power and Popular Religion*. In: Geoffrey Samuel, Hanish
Gives a brief introduction about Gesar and discusses various topics related to political authority in the epic in relation with Gesar’s shamanic powers.

Samuel 1996

Samuel 2005
Geoffrey Samuel, *Tantric Revisionings*, Ashgate, Burlington, VT, 2005—Describes Tantric practices in general and from the point of view of the present study establishes interesting parallels between various esoteric characters typical of tantric Buddhism in Tibet such as treasure revealers, inspired bards, and shamans.

Samuel 2007

Schicklgruber 1992
5th Seminar of the International Association for Tibetan Studies Narita 1989, Naritasan Shinshoji, 1992—*Presents a remarkable analysis of the notion of grib, its social role in the Tibetan society, as well as in rituals.*

**Schicklgruber 1998**


In: Blondeau 1998: 129ff.—*Gives an account of the horse race and the cult of the yul lha in western Nepal, and of its origin in connection with the chapter of the horse-race in the epic.*

**Schmidt 1925**


**Schrempf 2007**


**Schröder 1980**

Schuh 1973

Sihlé 2002

Skorupski 1990

Smith 2001
of the present study, extremely valuable historical information about the ris med movement.

SmithF 2006

Sørensen/Hazod 2005
Per K. Sørensen & Guntram Hazod, *Thundering Falcon*, VÖAW, Wien, 2005—*Depicts the cult of Khra ’brug in Tibet. Explains many concepts and terms pertaining to the local deities.*

Stein 1956
R.A. Stein, *L’épopée tibétaine de Gesar dans sa version lamaïque de Ling*, Presses universitaires de France, Paris, 1956—*Presents a translation into French of two chapters of the epic. Contains translations of the colophons showing the editing process to which Mipham and mKhyen brtse’i dbang po took part.*

Stein 1959
philological, anthropological, and historical aspects of the Gesar study. This work is the 'Bible' of Gesar researcher.

Stein 1972  
R.A. Stein, *Tibetan Civilization*, repr., Faber and Faber London, 1972—Represents one of Stein’s most valuable contributions to understand the Tibetan culture, society, institutions, and religion through the ages. Contains a detailed explanation of the oath culture at the time of the Tibetan empire as well as many myths of the origin from pre-Buddhist sources.

Stein 1978  

Stein 1979  

Stein 1983  

Stein 1984  
R.A. Stein, *Tibetica Antiqua II: L'usage de métaphores pour des distinctions honorifiques à

Stein 1985

Stein 1986

Stein 1988

Stein 1990

Steinkellner 1991
Ernst Steinkellner (ed.), *Tibetan History and Language, Studies Dedicated to Uray Géza on his Seventieth Birthday*, Arbeitskreis für tibetische und

Stietencron 1983


Subbotsky 2010


Tenzin Namgyal 2002


Terrone 2002


Thargyal 2007

Rinzin Thargyal, Nomads of Eastern Tibet, Brill, Leiden/Boston, 2007—Gives, inter alia, a fascinating account of the (geo)political and social situation in Khams over the last two centuries.

Thinley Norbu 2006


Thondup 1999

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tsering</td>
<td>2003</td>
<td>Pema Tsering, <em>Über die Art und Weise, wie die drei Waffengattungen mitsamt Köcher des Königs Gesar in der Figur des Maitreyanātha im Kloster b’Bras</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
spuṅs bei Lhasa vorhanden sind. In: ZAS 32, 2003: 101–115—Explains how Gesar’s weapons were put into the Maitreya statue in ’Bras spungs monastery along with other items to consecrate it.

Tsering T 2002

Tsering Thar, Shar rDza Hermitage: A New Bonpo Center in Khams. In: Lawrence Epstein (ed.), Khams pa Histories, Visions of People, Place and Authority, Brill, Leiden/Boston 2002—Gives an account of the life of one of the most remarkable masters and scholars of the Bon tradition in Khams.

Tucci/Heissig 1970


Uebach/Panglung 1988

**Unesco 2009**  
*Nomination for inscription on the Representative List in 2009 (Reference No. 00204), State Party: China, Name of Element: Gesar Epic Tradition,*  
Convention for the Safeguarding of the Intangible Cultural Heritage, Intergovernmental Committee for the Safeguarding of the Intangible Cultural Heritage, Fourth Session Abu Dhabi, United Arab Emirates, 28 September to 2 October 2009—Contains China’s file for the inscription of the Gesar Epic to the list of intangible cultural heritage of the Unesco. Provides a general presentation of the epic and its cultural importance today in China.

**Uray 2008**  

**Walter 2009**  
Michael L. Walter, *Buddhism and Empire*, Brill, Leiden/Boston, 2009—Presents a very comprehensive study of the Tibetan Empire from a historical and socio-political perspective as well as
from the point of view of religion and pre-Buddhist beliefs.

Weishaar 1999


Wenbin 2002


Wolinsky 1991


Veit 2002


Yang 1993

tradition centered around the epic and the rituals such as mirror divination.

Yang 2001

Yang Enhong, *On the Study of the Narrative Structure of Tibetan Epic: A Record of King Gesar.*

3 Translations of selected Gesar rituals

3.1 The Accomplisher of Aspirations

3.1.1 Introduction

The following text, \textit{bSam pa'i don grub ma}, is purificatory smoke offering (\textit{bsangs mchod}) to Gesar. The original manuscript was acquired in Mongolia by Gezá Bethlenfalvy of the Hungarian Academy of Sciences who kindly made it available to me. The dimensions of the folios are 15.7 cm x 7cm and those of the hand-written text are 13.9cm x 5cm, except for the first folio which only has two lines written in the middle of the page. The text is versified. There is unfortunately no mention of its author, nor any indication of its author’s background in terms of lineage and tradition. It is likewise difficult to date it with any certainty. The paper it is written on is quite recent but since it is obvious that the text has been copied or dictated, this, in itself, cannot be considered to be meaningful regarding the date of the ritual. A few phonological peculiarities show that the text was probably hastily dictated to the scribe of the manuscript, without any meticulous correction or rigorous editing: (1) there are a few scribal errors affecting the morphology of verbs—for instance, the secondary suffix \textit{sa} is repeatedly added to verbal stems, even when this leads to phonological inconsistencies, i.e. \textit{bsrungs tu gsol} instead of \textit{bsrung tu gsol} [see f.2b,8]; (2) an instrumental \textit{yis} is used for an emphatic particle \textit{ni} [see f.1b,6]. The following elements also indicate that this manuscript was most probably intended for personal use: (1) the paper used is very thin—it seems to have been taken from an exercise notebook. Usually,
thicker kinds of paper are used to preserve religious texts. (2) A certain number of abbreviations are used: a cross (X) indicates the omission of a term that is repeated on several occasions [bsangs in f.3a,6–3b,7 and bkra shis shog or shis shog in f.4b,3]; tshogs [f.3a,6], thams cad [f.3a,8;4a,3 & 4], rnams [f.4a,8], legs [f.4b,2], and bkra shis [f.4b,2] are abbreviated. (3) The punctuation, which is not always consistent, is kept to a minimum.

The Mongolian origin of the text is confirmed by a few phonological deviations that consistently happen throughout the text. ‘Gesar’ is spelt ge ser instead of ge sar [see f.1a,1; 1b,1; 1b,6; 2a,4; 2b,8; 3b,3; 3b,4 (3 times); 3b,5; 4a,1]. Some consistent vocalic substitutions are also found, such as the vowel “e” that is occasionally used for “i”: de reng instead of de ring [see f.4b,1], or bkra shes instead of bkra shis [4b,6] although bkra shis is also found three lines above [see f.4b,3].

3.1.2 Edition

1 [f.1a] निःश्रयः सुरेन्द्र भूतानां भगवानं दुर्गमानां सर्वं दुर्गमानां किं पुरुषान्

2 [f.1b] निःश्रयः सुरेन्द्र भूतानां भगवानं दुर्गमानां किं पुरुषान्

3 श्रीर्मोन्तसिद्धो निःश्रयः भूतानां भगवानं दुर्गमानां किं पुरुषान्

4 श्रीर्मोन्तसिद्धो निःश्रयः भूतानां भगवानं दुर्गमानां किं पुरुषान्

5 श्रीर्मोन्तसिद्धो निःश्रयः भूतानां भगवानं दुर्गमानां किं पुरुषान्

17 The text has mañjughoṣaya instead of mañjughoṣaya.
6 དེ་སྲིད་པའི་སྡེབས་དང་་ཚེ་བ་བསྐྱོང་།
7 བཤེན་པོ་དོན་ལེགས་ཀུན་བོ།

8 དབུ་ཅན་ལ་འཇུག་པ་ཅིག་བསྐྱོང་།
9 བུ་ངུས་སེམས་དཔོན་འོད་མེད་ཀུན།

10 བྱ་ོད་བྱུང་བའི་ཚིགས་པ།
11 བྱ་ོད་བྱུང་བའི་ཚིགས་པ།

12 མ་ཕྲོ་བི་ཡེ་ན་མ་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།
13 མ་ཕྲོ་བི་ཡེ་ན་མ་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།

14 བོད་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་བཤྱུར་བའི་མི་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།
15 བོད་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་བཤྱུར་བའི་མི་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།

16 བོད་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་བཤྱུར་བའི་མི་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།
17 བོད་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་བཤྱུར་བའི་མི་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།

18 བོད་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་བཤྱུར་བའི་མི་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།
19 བོད་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་བཤྱུར་བའི་མི་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།

20 བོད་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་བཤྱུར་བའི་མི་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།
21 བོད་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་བཤྱུར་བའི་མི་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།

22 བོད་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་བཤྱུར་བའི་མི་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།
23 བོད་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་བཤྱུར་བའི་མི་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།

24 བོད་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་བཤྱུར་བའི་མི་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།
25 བོད་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་བཤྱུར་བའི་མི་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།

26 བོད་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་བཤྱུར་བའི་མི་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།
27 བོད་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་བཤྱུར་བའི་མི་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།

28 བོད་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་བཤྱུར་བའི་མི་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།
29 བོད་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་བཤྱུར་བའི་�ི་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།

30 བོད་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་བཤྱུར་བའི་མི་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།
31 བོད་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་ཤིང་བི་དུས་སྡུ་བཤྱུར་བའི་མི་ལྟ་མོ་སྤྱོད་པ།

---

18 MS: rgyal po yis. The instrumental particle does not make sense here and is probably a scribal error. One expects ni or dang since the verb gshegs is tha mi dad pa. Cf. SDG 23–24.
19 MS: dba’ po.
20 MS: srungs ma.
21 MS: sbrul pa.
This verse has probably been misplaced and should come right after SDG 78 since it disrupts the epistrophe formed by SDG 75, 77, 78.

25 MS: 'drug.
26 MS: brkyang.
27 This verse has probably been misplaced and should come right after SDG 78 since it disrupts the epistrophe formed by SDG 75, 77, 78.
82 [f.4a]
84 [f.4b]
86 [f.4b]
88 [f.4b]
90 [f.4b]
92 [f.4b]
94 [f.4b]
96 [f.4b]
98 [f.4b]
100 [f.4b]
102 [f.4b]
104 [f.4b]
106 [f.4b]
108 [f.4b]

28 MS: len.
3.1.3 Translation

1 “The Accomplisher of Aspirations”, a method to offer a smoke ritual to King Gesar\(^{30}\)

[1. Homage to the guru]

2 Homage to the guru Mañjughoṣa!

[2. Preparation of the offering substances]

3–4 Now, those who want to offer a smoke ritual to King Gesar should prepare in the right way the substances for the purification by means of smoke, the offering of the golden beverage, and so on.

[3. Receiving the yidam’s empowering blessings]

5 One receives the empowering blessings by means of the six mantras and six mudras connected with the confidence of being one’s own yidam, [proceed with the offering itself].

[4. Invocation and invitation of the gurus, yidams, and protectors]

6 kye! kye! Guru, yidam, three jewels,

---

\(^{29}\) MS: bgra shes.

\(^{30}\) The Tibetan text consistently reads ge ser.
Hosts of deities of the four classes of tantras,\textsuperscript{31}

Dākas, dākinīs, dharmapālas, and so on.

Local gods (yul lha) and spirits owning [this] land (gzhi bdag), come here!

In particular, King Gesar,

Together with your retinue ('khor bcas) of thirty-three knights (dpa’ bo),\textsuperscript{32}

Three hundreds commanders (sna 'dren), guards, and so on,

Please come to this place!

Having come [here], in the sky in front of us,

Each of you, please be seated!

[5. Homage]

We, patrons, bla mas (yon mchod),\textsuperscript{33} and their retinue,

Will bow [to you] with [our] pure three doors.\textsuperscript{34}

[6. Offering of the visualized substances]

The [offering] substances prepared (dngos bshams) and imagined:

The five sorts of desirable objects ('dod yon rnam lnga) which are an enjoyment (nyer spyod) [for the senses],

\textsuperscript{31} This refers to kriya, carya, yoga and *anuttarayogatantras.

\textsuperscript{32} The passage beginning at [SDG 23–25] mentions thirty dpa’ bo sum cu so gsum mentioned in this verse is a mistake or at least only occurs metri causa. Instead of ikhyad par ge ser gyal po yisil/dpa’ bo sum cu so gsum dang/sna 'dren gsum brgya srungs ma sogsil/khor bcas gnas 'dir gshegs su gsol as it is found in the manuscript, ikhyad par ge ser gyal po nil/dpa’ bo sum cu srungs ma dang/sna 'dren gsum brgya srungs ma sogsil/khor bcas gnas 'dir gshegs su gsol/ would be preferable.


\textsuperscript{34} The three doors (sgo gsum) represent the body (lus), speech (ngag), and mind (yid). In the present context, this means that homage is paid in deed, word, and thought, insisting hereby on the completeness of the action performed.
The seven royal treasures of a universal monarch (rgyal srid sna bdun), the eight auspicious substances (rdzas brgyad),
The supreme ocean of ambrosia (bdud rtsilamṛta), namely, the offering of the golden beverage (gser skyems),
Guru, yidam, hosts of dharmapālas,
In particular, King Gesar, [together with your]
Thirty knights (dpa’ bo sum cu), guards, and so on,
With a caring and loving mind, please accept (bzhes su gsol) them!

[7. Authentication of the ceremony-master by the lineage (gurus, yidams and dharmapālas)]
Having accepted them, fulfil the wishes
As desired by our benefactors and recipients, and accomplish all [necessary] actions.
Entrust him as your caretaker. Do not let him and his followers
Be heedless for a single moment!

[8. Gesar invocation, exhortation and supplication]
Kyi ki ki la swo swo swo!  
Ki  Perform your action! You, the manifestation of the gnyan,
Assist [our] armies in the hostile lands,
Put on your head the helmet of the sun,

35 This is a war cry, probably of Bon origin (see Stein 1972: 207). In the present case, the formulation in seven pādas of the war cry probably occurs metri causa. Another frequent version: ki ki bswo bswo la bswo. Gesar’s mantra also includes it. This war cry is also found in pre-Buddhist texts: “ki bswo che bo! May the gods win!”—see Clemente 1994: 130. Bellezza 2008: 320 explains: “The origination myth begins with the famous Bon word of invocation bswo, as do many ritual texts for the native Tibetan pantheon. The use of this word has crossed over into the Buddhist tradition as well.”
36 This is a short version of the war cry, in the way of an interjection.
Hang on your shoulder the shield of the moon,
Let the coat of mail of the stars cover your body,
Mount your steed of the quick lightning flash,
Hasten, hasten, hasten to the land of our enemies!
Slay [our] enemies, take the enemy’s wealth,
Defend us! At all times, protect us!
Defend our lives! Protect us!
Protect all our armies at all times!
Please defend all sentient beings!
Kyi! King Gesar, together with your retinue,
Completely pacify [any] dispute and quarrel,
Protect Buddha’s teaching in every respect,
Pacify infectious diseases [plaguing] human beings and animals.

[9. Purification ritual]
With these pervasive smoke clouds of that which is burnt in the fire of primordial knowing (ye shes mer),
Such as the kinds of incense whose fragrance is excellent (dri zhim spos sna),
The butter-flour (phye mar), and the best food (zas phud),
In order to purify everything that is worthy to be purified,
Today we present [to you] this offering of a smoke ritual.
Lineages gurus, may everything be purified.

38 In a Bon context, Karmay and Ramble translate the verb bsang by the expression ‘be purified’ (see Karmay 1998: 404–405 & Ramble 1998: 130–131). Since this is, however, a Buddhist ritual, one has to take into account that deities who transcend the world cannot be defiled, as opposed to
Yidams and hosts of peaceful and wrathful deities, may [everything] be purified!

Buddhas of the three times together with your sons, [the Bodhisattvas], may [everything] be purified!

Noble śravakas, pratyekabuddhas and arhats, may [everything] be purified!

Dākas, ḍākinīs, may [everything] be purified!

Dharmapālas, all protectors, may [everything] be purified!

Five bodies of the King together with his retinue, may [everything] be purified!

Eight classes of gods and demons, may [everything] be purified!

Five sisters of longevity, protectors of the teaching, may [everything] be purified!

Gods and nāgas, lords of the earth (sa bdag), local deities, may [everything] be purified!

We purify [everything]! King Gesar, may [everything] be purified!

Warlords, thirty-three dākas, may [everything] be purified!

King of the battling kings, may [everything] be purified!

Banner of virtue for your followers, may [everything] be purified!

[Protector] escorting those who go to the other side, [nirvāṇa], may [everything] be purified!

worldly demons, spirits, etc. I therefore translate bsangs here by ‘[may everything be] purified’, cf. pāda 50. I would like to thank Dr. Ramble and Prof. Tauscher for their suggestions regarding the translation of bsangs in the present context.
[Protector] escorting those who come to this side, [samsāra], may [everything] be purified!

Lord of the land (gzhi bdag) of stability [when] the camp (gar) falls into pieces ('drugs), may [everything] be purified!

Gesar, helper of thousands, may [everything] be purified!

Gesar who helps us secure victory [over the enemy], may [everything] be purified!

Gesar, pinnacle of absolute splendour, may [everything] be purified!

Gesar who is the invulnerability (sra ba) of [our] armor (go khrab), may [everything] be purified!

Gesar who is the sharpness of [our] blade, may [everything] be purified!

dGra lha who is the speed of the racehorse, may [everything] be purified!

dGra lha of the victory over the battalions of enemies, may [everything] be purified!

Blessing of the horse symbolizing the transmutation of everything, from bad to good, rKyang [bu kha dkar]'s body (sku), may [everything] be purified!40

---

39 I read rkyang (Gesar’s horse, see n.40 below) here instead of brkyang ‘stretched, raised’ as it is spelt in the text. The symbolism of the horse is central in this verse, as rta g.yang refers to the vitality of rlung rta. Norbu 1997: 69 elucidates this term in the following way: “… It [rlung rta or klung rta] seems to refer to the transmutation of every thing that depends on five elements from negative to positive, from good to bad, from misfortune to good fortune, from baleful portents to auspicious signs, from poverty to prosperity, and it implies that this should ensue with the greatest speed.” See also Karmay 1993a, for iconographic aspects of the Gesar rlung rta flags. A rkyang (equus kyang) is a hemione, a kind of Tibetan wild horse (see Stein 1959: 537–539).

40 The verse above assumes that one is familiar with the sgrung (‘tale’ or ‘legend’), since Gesar’s horse, rKyang bu kha dkar figures here among the dgra blas, which stresses rKyang bu kha dkar’s divine nature and importance. About Gesar’s horse, see Stein 1959: 537–542.
dGra lha who gathers glory and riches, may [everything] be purified!

dGra lha of victory over the three defects (skyon gsum), may [everything] be purified!

Please accomplish our wishes just as desired!

We supplicate you! We are bound [by means of our oath]! May the gods be victorious!\(^{41}\)

We offer, we pay homage [to you]. May the gods be victorious!

We glorify (stod) the archer (’phong ba). May the gods be victorious!

kye! [You] are the great pinnacle (spo).\(^{42}\) May the gods be victorious!

[You] are the great pinnacle of pinnacles. May the gods be victorious!

May the gods be victorious! May the gods be victorious! May the gods be victorious!

[10. Ritual of suppression of negativities (bzlog pa)]

King Gesar, be victorious over [all] enemies.

Destroy into ashes the srin po who cause harm,

Suppress all epidemics affecting human beings and cattle,

Make us free from hunger, thirst and poverty,

Suppress all fears of an untimely death,

Completely pacifying and cutting through negativities and obscurations,

Suppress all the harm caused by the four demons!

bhyo bhyo for all hostile forces, bhyo

\(^{41}\) For reasons explained in chapter 5.3.3 where the terms lha and bla are discussed, it is highly probable that lha is a Buddhist alteration of the pre-Buddhist term bla as in the case of dgra lhasgra bla.

\(^{42}\) spo can also be understood as ‘clan’.
bhyo bhyo for all obstacles which cause harm, bhyo

The time has come for the activity of suppressing and banishing [harmful spirits].

[11. Exhortation to perform the four appointed activities]

Fulfill the activities (‘phrin las) you have been appointed to perform,

Spread Buddha’s teaching and

Ensure that the kingdom is [as stable] as a mountain.

Accomplish the four activities [for the benefit] of

Us, patrons, bla ma (yon mchod), and their retinue.

Catch today the great abundance and prosperity (g.yang) produced in the ten directions,

Within the [principle of] good fortune (phywa) and prosperity (g.yang).

Bestow all that is wished for just as it is desired.

Make food, wealth, and all objects of enjoyment fall like rain.

May there be the good fortune of future virtue!

May there be the good fortune of obstacles being appeased!

May there be the good fortune of favorable circumstances!

May there be the good fortune of having power and strength!

[12. Dedication of merit and verses of aspirations]43

[May] merit spread and increase [and become] like Mount Meru!

[May] your great fame be [all-]pervading, like space!

43 The following closing verses (109-112) are composed of nine syllables instead of seven as is the rest of the text.
May longevity, health, and benefits for others spontaneously come to be!

May the goodness of the sublime ocean of your qualities come to be!

One should enhance [this ritual worship] with the auspiciousness of such [concluding verses of aspiration]. May this be of benefit for all sentient beings. 

*Sarva maṅgalam.*
3.2 mDo mKhyen brtse,44 The Wheel of Weapons [forged from] Meteoric Iron (Text 12)

3.2.1 Introduction

The following text is a gtor bzlog, a ritual to dispel, turn away, and send back negativities caused by evil spirits. The beginning of the ritual is marked by the influence of rDzogs chen.

3.2.2 Edition

1 [537]
2 [538]
3 [539]

---

44 See chapter 5.1.3 for a biographical sketch of the lives of the authors of the rituals translated here.
3.2.3 Translation

A Condensed gTor ma-Exorcism of the Great Lion King who Subdues the Enemies, called “The Wheel of Weapons [forged from] Meteoric Iron”
2  ḡūṃ

3  From the vast expanse (mkha’ dbyings) of the body of reality (chos sku), the unity of sheer knowing and emptiness (rig stong) free from mental proliferations,

4–5  Manifests the dgra lha, the best of sentient beings, the dancing power of sheer knowing (rig rtsal gar bsgyur),

The unceasing manifesting power (rtsal snang), the deity infinitely pervading (rab 'byams) the peaceful and wrathful ones.

6  Although you do not waver from the peaceful state that is your mind,

7–8  Great and glorious [heruka] who completely appears in the form of Rudra in order to destroy the hosts of demons, the enemies of the teaching,

Rāja who subdues demons,

9  Together with [your] ocean of innumerable emanations and their retinues,

10  As you accept this gtor ma of the enemies and obstructors’ flesh and blood,

11–12  Now, in this dark age when the five [degenerations] are spreading,

Do not neglect the sacred bond, accomplish the action that has been entrusted to you!

13  Dispel the harm of damaging the teaching of the great secret!

---

45 I translate chos skul>dhamnakāya by ‘body of reality’ to emphasize the aspect of reality expressed by the term dharma.

46 The five degenerations are that of life-span, view, afflictions, sentient beings, present age (see Dudjom 1991: 144).
Dispel the obstacles to the lifespan of the doctrine-holders, masters, and disciples!

Dispel the advent of times when elements arise as enemies!

Dispel the three outer and inner banes—sickness, famine, and war!

Dispel the [effect of] negative astrological divinations (spar kha) and sme [ba], obstacle-years, and inauspicious months!

Dispel the demon of cattle loss (god ’dre), the evil spirit of cattle loss (god sri), the demon of on-going contention (gyod ’dre), the evil spirit of on-going contention (gyod sri)!

Dispel the hostility of the demons that prey on children (chung sri), the demons that torment those who are old (rgan sri), and the demons that afflict the young (gzhon sri)!

Dispel the hostility of slanderers, gossipers, and thieves!

Having gathered and controlled without any exception

All negative signs, evil curses, and phur ba sorcery,

Such as the burning down and the crushing [spells cast] upon us by others,

Avert [them] by casting [them] back on the enemies of Buddha’s teaching,

Avert [them] by merely casting [them] back on the enemies of the yoga’s purpose,

Avert [them] by casting [them] back on the malevolent causers of hindrances,
Accomplish the activities of averting and casting back that you have been appointed [to perform]!

I, a mendicant of Dar mdo,

Have written this spontaneously after the visualization practice [and] the necessary accumulation of numbers [of mantras].

May it be the cause for the annihilation of the hateful enemy!

The copyist was named Shes rab. May it be virtuous and auspicious! Sarva maṅgalam
3.3 mKhyen brtse’i dbang po, The Melody of the Golden Age Cloud (Text 43)

3.3.1 Introduction

The following text is a gsol mchod, a ritual of supplication and offering to Gesar. Verses 19–34 are constituted of four nonosyllabic quatrains in which the first and fourth verses begin with a disyllabic Sanskrit word (or trisyllabic in verses 22 & 30).

3.3.2 Edition

1 [1a]ṃ

2

3

4

5

47 Xyl: sarvathakham.
48 Xyl: hi mam.
49 Xyl: zhas.
50 Xyl: spal bas.
51 Xyl: cha.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Line</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>甘酸加苏尔毒姿尔哈拉里尼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>法经绿虫经缔构床大平间土库</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>茜丙配多利素[2a]藏盐叠语所举录之</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>茜丙配多利素[2a]藏盐叠语所举录之</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>聚盐叠语所举录之</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>茜丙配多利素[2a]藏盐叠语所举录之</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>茜丙配多利素[2a]藏盐叠语所举录之</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>茜丙配多利素[2a]藏盐叠语所举录之</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>茜丙配多利素[2a]藏盐叠语所举录之</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>茜丙配多利素[2a]藏盐叠语所举录之</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>茜丙配多利素[2a]藏盐叠语所举录之</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

52 Xyl: bsu (2 times).
53 Xyl: no bi ka.
31 རིག་སིད་བོད་སོགས་ཀྱི་བོད་སོགས་ཀྱི་བོད་སོགས་ཀྱི་བོད་སོགས
32 ཡིང་གིས་བོད་སོགས་ཀྱི་བོད་སོགས་ཀྱི་བོད་སོགས
33 རིག་སིད་པོ་ལྡན་བོད་སོགས་ཀྱི་བོད་སོགས
34 རིག་སིད་པོ་ལྡན་བོད་སོགས
35 རིག་སིད་པོ་ལྡན་བོད་སོགས
36 རིག་སིད་པོ་ལྡན
37 རིག་སིད་པོ་ལྡན
38 རིག་སིད་པོ
39 རིག་སིད་པོ
40 རིག་སིད
41 རིག་སིད་པོ
42 རིག་སིད
43 རིག་སིད
44 རིག་སིད
45 རིག་སིད
46 རིག་སིད
47 རིག་སིད

3.3.3 Translation

1 A supplication and offering to Gesar, the great being, called “The Melody of the Golden Age Cloud”

2 Homage to the guru Padmākāra!

3 So now, if one wants to perform a supplication and offering to the Dharma protector (bka’ nyan) who is the great one of O rgyan, the dgra lha of Tibet and everywhere, Gesar, the great being, as one concentrates on the ritual substances that have been

34 Xyl: phen pa (2 times).
prepared such as gtor ma, drinks, food, offering of smoke (bsang), or burnt offerings (gsur), [one should repeat:]

4 Namah sarva tathagatabhyo visvamukhebhya sarvathah kham utgate
sphara na imam gagana kham svaha

5 Together with the offering of the substances that have been actually prepared and imagined to have been spread, as one utters the mantra and [performs the] mudra of the sky-treasury (nam mkha’ mdzod kyi sngags dang rgya), and with the resolute confidence of having made pour down like [rain] the great wealth of all that is desired from the great whirling cloud of the sky-treasury, one pronounces the following words accompanied by various pleasant melodies and music:

6 Hrih

9 Jewel of Jambudvipa, great lion, Power that subdues the enemies,

8 Who took the Vajra oath in the presence

7 Of Padma thod phreng, embodiment of the three roots,

10 Together with your retinue, do not neglect your sacred pledge, manifest from the vast expanse!55

11 As [we] now shout the sounds “Ki ki bswo bswo”,

12 Just like the glory of spring is welcomed with assurance by the cuckoo,

13 Gesar, great being, together with your retinue,

14 Please come to this marvelous divine mansion!

15 By all means, you, the lord of myriad magical manifestations,

16 Like the flashes of a string of lightning above the clouds,

55 dbyings can also be understood as meaning ‘celestial regions’. In this ritual, like in other Gesar rituals, there is a constant interplay between the outer, inner, and secret levels of the practice. Outerly, Gesar is a being, but from the perspective of rDzogs chen, he is the manifestation of sheer knowing (rig pa).
Come here now without delay,
And accomplish [our] wishes regarding business matters such as trade!
Enjoy with delight the offering-clouds of the nopika
That is born from the yoga of the assembly of the venerable elders
And from the power of the Tathāgata’s generosity
That are as boundless as the oceanic city of the king of the fish.
With music offered by pleasant lutes,
A lake where tea, chang, and [golden] drinks gather, like rivers flowing down,
Indra’s pleasure groves of coconut trees,
And astonishing (mo har byed) material offerings, we shall fulfill the sacred pledge.
As among those belonging to this side, all the noble children of sublime Tibet, Nepal, and the land of the Jīnas,
As many as the sands [of the river Ganges],
Gather here as if in Jeta’s grove,

---

56 Sam van Schaik understands no pi ka in the following way: “Note for readers of Tibetan: What is a no pi ka? The front cover of the spell book says bIg kru prad nya pra ba ‘I no pi ka. I hope that most will agree that the name is probably Bhikṣu Prajñāprabhā, but what is a no pi ka? I first came across the word in a poetical passage by Jigme Lingpa (at the beginning of his Pad ma dkar po) where he calls it “the essence of hearing, thinking and meditating” (thos bsam sgom pa’i sning po no pi ka). The term is much more common in the Dunhuang manuscripts, and an interpretation was first suggested by Kenneth Eastman in 1983, when he noted that the Tibeto-Sanskrit glossary in Pelliot tibétain 849 glosses it as sgrub thabs – the Tibetan word that we usually consider a translation of the Sanskrit sāḍhana, a manual for ritual and/or meditation. Robert Mayer and Cathy Cantwell, in their 2008 book on Phurba manuscripts, suggest (with thanks to Matthew Kapstein) that the probable origin of all this is a Sanskrit term sāḍhanaupayika. Thus sādhanaupayika becomes nopayika becomes no pi ka. This would be very neat because we thus get to the original Sanskrit term behind the Tibetan word sgrub thabs: sāḍhana = “accomplishment” = sgrub, while upayika = “means” = thabs.” See Sam van Schaik: http://earlytibet.com/category/china-and-tibet/page/3/.
57 For a description of pi wang, see Helffer 1994: 277.
Make even Vāgīśā⁵⁸ powerless to praise [your] fame and glory.

31 Having conquered the perfections of [the states of] appeasement and conditioned existence,

32 And being glorified [by the protectors of] the white side such as [rDo rje] Zu le sman,⁵⁹ and so on,

33–34 As you are exhorted with [the war cry] “E”,

35 Completely cast down the armies of demons,—all that goes against yoga.

36 Increase the wealth of the inanimate and animate universe, everywhere, in the hills and valleys,

37 Take care of us at all times, as one does with lambs,

38 Guard [us] from the terrifying abyss of darkness,

39 Accomplish each of the wishes we aspire to, just as desired.

40 Together with [your] community, the brotherhood (phu nu)⁶⁰ that is set in motion by the sound of [your] laughter “he he”,⁶¹

41 Those who stick together like the ocean, [your] retinue,

42 Within the state of mind of great delight of the sound “he”,

⁵８ vojīha or wo dči ha remains quite cryptic to me. The vowel “o” should probably be read “ā”. The problem remains nonetheless with regard to the consonant “ha”. Could it result from a scribe’s error made by a copyist who was not familiar with Sanskrit? In this case, we could read vāgīśa. The corresponding various options are: a person (vāgīśa, ‘a master of language’), the goddess of eloquence, knowledge, and arts, since Vāgīśa is one of Sarasvati’s names, or some quality such as eloquence (vāgīśatva). Among these three possibilities, Sarasvati seems the most plausible.

⁵⁹ One of the twelve bstan ma belonging to the sub-group of the sman mo chen mo, g.Yu yi dril bu, residing in Jo mo g.yu ri gnas mchog. Her secret name is rdo rje (dril bu) zugs legs ma or zu le sman, she is in some lists of the bstan mas known as rDo rje g.yu sgron ma (see Nebesky 1998: 183–190).

⁶⁰ See the indexed glossary.

⁶¹ Laughter is a defining characteristic of Gesar. Before his incarnation, his name is bZhad pa rdo rje, like Mi la ras pa (see Stein 1959: 505).
As you are at this very moment aware of the order imparted [to you] by the guru from O rgyan,

Block the passage to evil armies [at] the borders of Tibet and Khams,

Guard [us] from times of turmoil, years of calamities, frost and hail, blight and drought,

Attract [the boon of] descendants, food, wealth, possessions, good fortune (phya), and prosperity (g.yang),

Accomplish the activities consisting in the increase of joy and happiness regarding the teaching and sentient beings!

Thus, as he saw a little the avenue to the benefit of others, the servant of the lake-born guru, mKhyen brtse’i dbang po, wrote whatever came [to his mind]. May it be the cause of the spontaneous accomplishment of all virtuous and excellent endeavours!
3.4 mKhyen brtse’i dbang po, The Auspicious Melody
(Text 44)

3.4.1 Introduction

The following text is a short gsol mchod, a supplication and offering to Gesar.

3.4.2 Edition

1 [2b] བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དང་གཞི་གལ་ཏེ་བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དང་གཞི་གལ་ཏེ་བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དང་གཞི་གལ་ཏེ

2 བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དང་གཞི་གལ་ཏེ

3 བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དང་གཞི་གལ་ཏེ་བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དང་གཞི་གལ་ཏེ

4 བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དང་གཞི་གལ་ཏེ་བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དང་གཞི་གལ་ཏེ

5 བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དང་གཞི་གལ་ཏེ་བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དང་གཞི་གལ་ཏེ

6 བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དང་གཞི་གལ་ཏེ

7 བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དང་གཞི་གལ་ཏེ

8 བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དང་གཞི་གལ་ཏེ

9 བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དང་གཞི་གལ་ཏེ

10 བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དང་གཞི་གལ་ཏེ

11 བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དང་གཞི་གལ་ཏེ

12 བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དང་གཞི་གལ་ཏེ

13 བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དང་གཞི་གལ་ཏེ

62 Xyl: bab.
[14] བོད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་སོགས་ང་བསྡུས་ཀྱིས་བོད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་སོགས་

[15] [3a] བོད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་སོགས་

[16] བོད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་སོགས་ང་བསྡུས་ཀྱིས་

[17] [3b] བོད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་སོགས་

[18] བོད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་སོགས་ང་བསྡུས་ཀྱིས་

[19] [3c] བོད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་སོགས་

[20] བོད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་སོགས་ང་བསྡུས་ཀྱིས་

[21] [3d] བོད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་སོགས་

[22] བོད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་སོགས་ང་བསྡུས་ཀྱིས་

[23] [3e] བོད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་སོགས་

[24] བོད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་སོགས་

[25] [3f] བོད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་སོགས་

[26] བོད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་སོགས་

[27] [3g] བོད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་སོགས་

[28] བོད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་སོགས་

[29] བོད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་སོགས་

63 Xyl: bskang.
64 Xyl: bgyur.
65 Xyl: bgyur.
66 Xyl: phong.
3.4.3 Translation

1 A condensed supplication and offering to the lord, the king Gesar, [called] “The Auspicious Melody”

2 Homage to Padmākāra!

3 One should purify the ritual substances that have been arranged such as *gtor ma*, golden drinks, smoke (*bsang*), and so on, with *raṃ yan kham* and bring down [offerings] with *om āḥ hūṃ*.

4–5 *ḥriḥ*

At the center of the *mandala* of the ocean of desirable objects,

Arising from the melody of the sky-treasury state of non-distraction,

6 Gurus, yidams, *dakinis*, protectors, and so on,

7 Ocean-like assembly of those who are objects of refuge worthy of veneration,

8–10 And, in particular, unique deity,

Personal god (*sku lha*) of the activity displayed by Khri srong de’u btsan for the happiness of Tibet and Khams,

Gesar, the being who accomplishes [all] purposes,

11 Together with all [your] sisters and brothers (*mched*), retinue, emanations, and emanations of [your] emanations,

12 Be diligent [in providing us] with the inexhaustible treasure of primordial knowing and all that is desired!

13 Fulfill the sacred pledge within the constituent element of reality (*chos kyi dbyings*)!
Please forgive all violations and impairments of commitments, transgressions, and mistakes!

When [we] enthrone [you] with the glorious wealth [belonging to] the states of conditioned existence and appeasement (srid zhi),

Teach all of us [with] a delighted, smiling face!

Arouse in enemies and those causing hindrances an attitude of magnanimous majesty!

Protect your followers, avert unfavourable conditions ([’gal] rkyen), and bring hostile hindrances under control!

Assist [us] as a friend at home and abroad!

Pacify diseases, famine, war, quarrels, and fears!

Increase longevity, fortune, glory, prosperity, renown, fame, power, and wealth!

Extend the life-span of the doctrine holders who spread the Buddha’s doctrine!

When it is about to rain heavily, protect [us from] blight, frost, and hail!

Send horses, cattle, grain, good fortune (phya), prosperity (g.yang), and possessions!

In short, having effortlessly and quickly established

In our minds wholesome objects of aspiration,

Finally bestow the accomplishment of supreme bliss!

May [everything] always be pervaded by auspiciousness and glory!
Thus, in response to the request accompanied by a white scarf of the ambassador of the precious lord of *Gling*, the virtuous one that has been nurtured by both the worldly and religious glory of devotion and sacred commitment, dPal ldan bkra shis, 'Jam dbyang mkhyen brtse’i dbang po immediately wrote this at an auspicious time. *Maṅgalam.*
3.5 mChog gyur gling pa, Prayer to Gesar (without title—introduction to Text 25)

3.5.1 Introduction

The following text is a very short gsol mchod, a supplication and offering to Gesar.

3.5.2 Edition

1. On the snowy mountain of emptiness

2. Majestically stands the great lion of the thought of awakening,

3. Holding the [wish-fulfilling] jewel of the skillful means of the secret mantra [vehicle].
4–5 To the being who subdues the enemies of the five poisonous afflictions,
I pay homage!

6 As I offer cloudbanks of Samantabhadra’s offerings.

7 Destroy all the outer, inner, and secret demons!

8 Bestow the supreme and ordinary accomplishments!

9 Thus, with regard to the request stating that the monks of rDzogs chen monastery needed a supplication and offering to the great lion that generates the thought of awakening, the one named mChog [gyur gling pa] wrote this. [May it be] auspicious.
3.6 mChog gyur gling pa, Smoke ritual (without title—Text 26)

3.6.1 Introduction

The following text is a very short bsangs mchod, a smoke offering to Gesar.

3.6.2 Edition

1 [263]ṃChöd gyur-gling pa  

2ṃChöd gyur-gling pa  

3ṃChöd gyur-gling pa  

4ṃChöd gyur-gling pa  

5ṃChöd gyur-gling pa  

6ṃChöd gyur-gling pa  

8ṃChöd gyur-gling pa

3.6.3 Translation

1 Regarding the offering of a smoke ritual to the great lion, the Jewel that subdues the enemies, having purified [the offering substances] with ram yam kham and empowered [them] with om āh hūṃ, [say:]

2 kye! kye!

Manifestation of the mind of the one born form a lotus,

3 Great lion, Jewel that subdues the enemies,
Together with the thirty *wer mas*, the entire brotherhood (*phu nu*),

Come here! Accept [this] offering of smoke!

Do not forget to assist [your] companions!

We supplicate you to accomplish all [our] wishes, whatever we desire!

This was written at once by mChog gyur gling pa.

3.7.1 Introduction

The following text is a bsangs mchod, a smoke offering to Gesar. The beginning of the ritual is a short rDzogs chen teaching in itself, written in a very poetic way. The author describes the offerings in great detail. Gesar’s retinue is also invoked individually, one major figure after another.

3.7.2 Edition

1 [539] [540] [541] [542] [543] [544] [545] [546] [547] [548] [549] [550] [551] [552] [553] [554] [555] [556] [557] [558] [559] [560] [561] [562] [563] [564] [565] [566] [567] [568] [569] [570] [571] [572] [573] [574] [575] [576] [577] [578] [579] [580] [581] [582] [583] [584] [585] [586] [587] [588] [589] [590] [591] [592] [593] [594] [595] [596] [597] [598] [599] [600] [601] [602] [603] [604] [605] [606] [607] [608] [609] [610] [611] [612] [613] [614] [615] [616] [617] [618] [619] [620] [621] [622] [623] [624] [625] [626] [627] [628] [629] [630] [631] [632] [633] [634] [635] [636] [637] [638] [639] [640] [641] [642] [643] [644] [645] [646] [647] [648] [649] [650] [651] [652] [653] [654] [655] [656] [657] [658] [659] [660] [661] [662] [663] [664] [665] [666] [667] [668] [669] [670] [671] [672] [673] [674] [675] [676] [677] [678] [679] [680] [681] [682] [683] [684] [685] [686] [687] [688] [689] [690] [691] [692] [693] [694] [695] [696] [697] [698] [699] [700] [701] [702] [703] [704] [705] [706] [707] [708] [709] [710] [711] [712] [713] [714] [715] [716] [717] [718] [719] [720] [721] [722] [723] [724] [725] [726] [727] [728] [729] [730] [731] [732] [733] [734] [735] [736] [737] [738] [739] [740] [741] [742] [743] [744] [745] [746] [747] [748] [749] [750] [751] [752] [753] [754] [755] [756] [757] [758] [759] [760] [761] [762] [763] [764] [765] [766] [767] [768] [769] [770] [771] [772] [773] [774] [775] [776] [777] [778] [779] [780] [781] [782] [783] [784] [785] [786] [787] [788] [789] [790] [791] [792] [793] [794] [795] [796] [797] [798] [799] [800] [801] [802] [803] [804] [805] [806] [807] [808] [809] [810] [811] [812] [813] [814] [815] [816] [817] [818] [819] [820] [821] [822] [823] [824] [825] [826] [827] [828] [829] [830] [831] [832] [833] [834] [835] [836] [837] [838] [839] [840] [841] [842] [843] [844] [845] [846] [847] [848] [849] [850] [851] [852] [853] [854] [855] [856] [857] [858] [859] [860] [861] [862] [863] [864] [865] [866] [867] [868] [869] [870] [871] [872] [873] [874] [875] [876] [877] [878] [879] [880] [881] [882] [883] [884] [885] [886] [887] [888] [889] [890] [891] [892] [893] [894] [895] [896] [897] [898] [899] [900] [901] [902] [903] [904] [905] [906] [907] [908] [909] [910] [911] [912] [913] [914] [915] [916] [917] [918] [919] [920] [921] [922] [923] [924] [925] [926] [927] [928] [929] [930] [931] [932] [933] [934] [935] [936] [937] [938] [939] [940] [941] [942] [943] [944] [945] [946] [947] [948] [949] [950] [951] [952] [953] [954] [955] [956] [957] [958] [959] [960] [961] [962] [963] [964] [965] [966] [967] [968] [969] [970] [971] [972] [973] [974] [975] [976] [977] [978] [979] [980] [981] [982] [983] [984] [985] [986] [987] [988] [989] [990] [991] [992] [993] [994] [995] [996] [997] [998] [999] [1000]
69 Xyl: shugs.
3.7.3 Translation

An Offering of Smoke to Lord Gesar Called “The [Gem] That Brings Down the Rain of the Needed and Desired”

Having prepared the offering substances that are appropriate such as gtor ma, golden drink, etc., and the implements necessary for the smoke offering, those who want to supplicate and worship Padma’s protector, the lord of Gling, Gesar, purify and spread the smoke offering by pronouncing the usual empowering [mantras] or the three syllables [om āh ōṁ]. Then, one pronounces the following words accompanied with music.

kye! The playful expression (gar) of the unchanging primordial knowing’s hundred moods,73

The lord of the dgra lhas who is accomplished by means of aspiration,

The one imbued with the magic that protects the world,

The lord, the great lion, the king,

Abiding as a multifaceted gem

In the luminous constituent element of reality (chos dbyings), the vast expanse (klong) free from mental proliferations,

---

72 Xyl: yi.
73 Reference to gar gyi nyams brgyad that usually refers to the eight expressions of dance or dramatic art.
The womb (sbubs) of the vital essence (thig le) of rainbow light that is spontaneous presence (lhun grub),

The pure realm of the celestial city,

The matrix of basic space that is the invisible expanse,

When the yogi invokes [him] with longing

On account of the great power of [his] clairvoyance (mngon shes) and magic,

Cloudbanks of the three roots gather above,

The shower of the Dharma protectors is brought down in the intermediate space,

The blizzard of the dgra blas whirls on the ground,

The rainbow light music animates the ten directions.

He comes with the power of a cakravartin,

And abides in the sphere of his real physical support

And other imaginary emanations arising from his mind.

The divine substances in the jewel vessel,

Raised as the pure essence that is the ambrosia (bdud rtsi/amṛta) of the golden drink,

Stunning flowers of rainbow hue,

Incense and perfumes pervading the surroundings,

The all-pervasive and unimpeded (zang thal) clarity of the brilliant [celestial body] that brings about the day,

Cool or warm scented water that is lovely to come in contact with,

Delicious and nutritious food that one cannot eat to satiety,
Harmonious melodies and sounds of music,
[All these] external offerings we offer as the sky-treasury.
Ravishing exquisite forms, as far as the eye can see,
Melodic songs that are elixir to the ear,
Fragrant smells, water, and delicious food,
Assortments of clothes that are soft to the touch,
[All these] inner offerings of desirable objects—all that is pleasurable—we offer.
With chang of fermented cereal, and perfect tea,
Sweet mar thud,74 milk, and curd,
Sugar, molasses, and honey,
Excellent cereal flour, meat, and blood, namely,
With offerings of all that is eatable and drinkable we worship [you].
Garments made of wool, silk, and brocade,
A solid armor and sharp weapons,
A crown, a long necklace, a garland, and so on,
[All] offerings of fine dressing clothes, soft, resplendent and majestic we offer.
All kinds of medicine, jewels, and cereals,
[All] sorts of [animals] such as wild birds, deers, and cattle,
Powerful horses and fast mules,
Spotted female yaks and g.yang kar sheeps,

74 See Dorjee 1996: 45 n.61, “Mar thud is a very delicious kind of food made of butter mixed with cheese and treacle or molasses.” Since rtsi bcud can refer to honey, it can be read as characterizing mar thud. It is, however, also possible to read rtsi bcud mar thud as a copulative compound: ‘butter and mar thud’ as rtsi bcud stands also for a kind of churned butter.
As well as fierce watchdogs,

[All these] offering-clouds of everything that delights the mind we offer.

With various good sorts of wood blazing in the fire,

Such as the turquoise juniper (g.yu shug), bal bu, and the white fern (mkhan dkar),

The pungence of smoke spreading throughout the sky,

The sweet fragrance of trust pervading the intermediate space,

Any desirable objects and melodies arising,

All [kinds] of appearances and possible things that are delightful according to the world,

This wonderful offering of purification through smoke (bsangs),

Lord of Jambudvīpa, being who accomplishes [all] aims,

Together with [your] retinue of thirteen dgra blas, may [you] be purified!

Great god Sita Brahmā, may [you] be purified!

Great gnyen, [Gesar’s] personal god (sku lha), Ger mdzo, may [you] be purified!

King of the nāgas, gTsug na rin chen, may [you] be purified!

Elder brother Dung khyung dkar po, may [you] be purified!

Younger brother Klu sbrul ’od chen, may [you] be purified!

---

75 Some texts refer to thirteen wer mas.
76 In the present text, bsangs is used here as it is in Bon; the deities are purified from the grib of those invoking them. In the SDG 50,52 passim, bsangs is used in the sense of 'May everything be purified!'. The syntax and the meaning differ in both texts, as explained in the footnote 38.
77 Sita Brahmā was the tutelary god of Srong bstan sgam po. For a detailed account of this, see lha chen tshangs pa dkar po in glossary.
Aunt gNam sman dkar mo, may [you] be purified!

I Cam srid Tha le ’od phram, may [you] be purified!

Red gNyan stag of the dgra blas, may [you] be purified!

Thirteen [cang sengs that are] youthful messengers, may [you] be purified!

Thirty beings that are knights (dpa’ thus), may [you] be purified!

Seven beings that are the noble braves (yang thus), may [you] be purified!

Three valiant ones (zhe thus), falcon, eagle and wolf, may [you] be purified!

[Four] dGyes sde and sMan, together with [your] retinue, may [you] be purified!

dGra blas of the three Phya, dMu, gTsug, may [you] be purified!

dGra blas of the six human clans (mi bu gdung drug),78 may [you] be purified!

Three hundred sixty wer mas,79 may [you] be purified!

Nine hundred ninety thousand dgra blas, may [you] be purified!

Armies of the gods, armies of the nāgas, armies of the gnyans, may [you] be purified!

Seventy glorious protectors gTsang rigs, and so on,

Lord of the place (gzhi bdag) who protects the ‘white side’,80

---

78 The six clans are: 'Bum pa, 'Dan ma, sTag rong, rGya, sKya lo, 'Bru (see Karmay 1998: 494–495).
79 In some texts, the thug kars are supposed to be three hundred sixty (see Norbu 1997: 53).
80 'Concerning the distinction between the protectors (sruṅ ma) who are ’jig rten las ’das pa ‘supramundane' and those who are ’jig rten pa ‘mundane’, according to Klon rdol bla ma’s bsTan sruṅ dam can rgya mtsho ’i miṅ gi graiṣ the former have attained the higher Paths of the Ārya or
As well as gods of the region (yul lha) and local deities (zo dor),
together with [your] retinues, may [you] be purified!

We worship [you], we honor [you], we enthrone [you]!

Accomplish all aspirations!

kye! To the one who has been conferred spiritual power by the Lake-
born One,

The emanation (ʼphrul) of the Flower of the God Brahma,81
The great lion, the Power (rtsal) of the jewel that subdues the enemies,
The brilliance (ʼod) of the sun and the radiance (mdangs) of the moon,
He who glows with splendour and stands firmly like Mount Meru,
Valiant and strong like a lion,
The embodiment of the dgra bla’s attributes of bravery, [we]
supplicate!

Carrying in [his] hands the royal insignia and sharp weapons,

Riding and riding82 the wise (ʼphel po)83 rKyang rgod,

He displays [various] appearances (rnam ’gyur) like the dance of the
moon on water,

[And] sends in action the swarm of the dgra blas’ armies.

Brought down to subdue the demon of Hor and the forces of evil,

‘Noble’ (ʼphags lam = āryamārga, starting with the mthoṅ lam = darśanamārga), whilst the latter
are classified as ordinary worldlings (so sō ’i skyes bo = prthagjana). The latter are subdivided into
those who have entered the Path (lam, i.e. the tshogs lam = sambhāramārga and the sbyor lam =
prayogamārga); as beings having accepted a convention (dam tshig = samaya) and bound
themselves by an oath (dam bcas pa) to guard the ‘White Side’ (dkar phyogs), they protect
upāsakas/upāsikās (dge bsāñ pha ma) and bhikṣus/bhikṣunīs (dge loṅ pha ma), and those who
have entered the Path.” Ruegg 2008: 167.
81 The name Tshangs pa lha yi me tog is an epithet of king Khri srong lde’u btsan.
83 For an interpretation of ʼphel po, pher po, g.yer po as adjectives pertaining Gesar’s horse, see
Stein 1959: 539–540.
He is the one who has power over [the entire] wealth of India and Tibet.

dGra bla of Jambudvīpa endowed with magical powers,

We worship and praise [you], together with [your] retinue.

As we have glorified [you], let your resplendent radiance come forth!

We enthrone [you] as the dgra bla, the Dharma protector!

Without forgetting the antidote of the sacred pledge,

Raise the victory banner of the Buddha’s teaching!

Prolong the lifetime of the beings who uphold it!

Let flourish the thick forest where the noble assembly is gathered!

Release the hundred-petalled lotus of hearing and reflecting!\(^{84}\)

By extracting the ambrosia—the honey—of meditative experiences and realizations,

Provide the spiritual sustenance to all sentient beings—the bees!

As you will have finally dispelled the darkness of misery,

Such as the fears of disease, conflicts, and famine,

Pervade the entire space and [all] directions

With the sunlight of perfect joy and happiness!

By means of the smile of the most glorious maiden among all who are spiritual or mundane,

The magical illusion that makes world rejoice,

Attract all beings on earth to [your] feast,

[And] make frantic with happiness, joy, and pleasure!

---

\(^{84}\) This refers to śrutamayī and cintāmâyī prajñā.
Holding firm the pillar of immutable life,

Unfold vastly in successive waves the conduct [that is in harmony with] *Dharma*!

As the canopy of clouds of the four sorts [of abundance]\(^{85}\) is thickening,

The lake of wealth, all that is good, and prosperity are rising,

And the jewels [that fulfill] all wishes are pouring like rain,

With the manifestation of the good fortune that spontaneously accomplishes all benefits,

Beautify the world!

Thus Ka’rma ngag dbang yon tan rgya mtsho\(^{86}\) immediately wrote this within his meditation shelter in order to comply with the extremely pleasing command, accompanied by a white silk scarf, of the *Vajradhara* named Padma stating that he had to reveal the most harmonious versified smoke offering to the *dgra lhas* since there were some purpose and favourable conditions for the *Vajradhara* Padma who [was about to] enter into the state of appeasement. May good fortune increase!

---

\(^{85}\) This probably refers to *phun tshogs sde bzhi* (*Dharma*, wealth, pleasure, and liberation).  
\(^{86}\) This is one of ’Jam mgon kong sprul’s names.
3.8 Mi pham, Practice of the union with the guru, the
great being of the unchanging primordial knowing,
sheer knowing (Text 47)

3.8.1 Introduction

The following text, Rig pa 'gyur med ye shes kyi skyes bu chen po 'i bla ma'i
rnal 'byor, is a short guru yoga, a practice of the union with the guru in the
context of rDzogs chen. The structure of the octosyllabic verses is X/XX-XX-XX-
X (see Helffer 1977: 428ff).

3.8.2 Edition

1 \[652]\]

2 སི་བོ་བཞི་བབས་ེ་བོ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ

3 སྦེ་བོ་བཞི་བབས་ེ་བོ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ

4 སྦེ་བོ་བཞི་བབས་ེ་བོ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ

5 སྦེ་བོ་བཞི་བབས་ེ་བོ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ

6 སྦེ་བོ་བཞི་བབ་ེ་བོ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ

7 སྦེ་བོ་བཞི་བབ་ེ་བོ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ

8 སྦེ་བོ་བཞི་བབ་ེ་བོ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ་ེ

9 སྦེ་བོ་བཞི་བབ་ེ་བོ་ེ་ེ་ེ

10 སྦེ་བོ་བཞི་བབ་ེ་བོ་ེ་ེ

11 སྦེ་བོ་བཞི་བབ་ེ་བོ་ེ་ེ

12 སྦེ་བོ་བཞི་བབ་ེ་བོ་ེ

13 སྦེ་བོ་བཞི་བབ་ེ་བོ
14 བིན་པར་བསམ་འབོད་པའི་མ་དོན་ལེན།
15 བསམ་དབང་གི་མ་དོན་དོན་པར།
16 ལུང་གི་གསེར་དོན་ལེན་བསམ་བྱེད་དོན།
17 རོང་ཆུབ་གཞི་ཏོ་[653]ཐ་མོ་དབང་ཆེན་པོ།
18 འལ་བར་ོད་དཔོན་དགོས་པའི་མོ།
19 བསམ་དབང་གི་མ་དོན་དོན་པར།
20 བིན་པར་ོད་དཔོན་དགོས་པའི་མོ།
21 བསམ་དབང་གི་མ་དོན་དོན་པར།
22 བིན་པར་ོད་དཔོན་དགོས་པའི་མོ།
23 བསམ་དབང་གི་མ་དོན་དོན་པར།
24 འལ་བར་ོད་དཔོན་དགོས་པའི་མོ།
25 བསམ་དབང་གི་མ་དོན་དོན་པར།
26 བིན་པར་ོད་དཔོན་དགོས་པའི་མོ།
27 བསམ་དབང་གི་མ་དོན་དོན་པར།
28 ཚིག་ཐོས་ཀྱི་ཤིག་སྐྱེས་པ། གསར་མཛད་ཤིག་ཤིས་ངོ་བོ། འོགས།
29 རེགས་ཐོག་པར་རྣམ་པ་དབང་གི་ཤིག་སྐྱེས་པ།
30 སི་མང་བསམ་པར་སྣང་བཅུ་བུ་མ་དོན་དོན་པར་དགེ་དགེ་འབོད་པས།
31 འལ་བར་ོད་དཔོན་དགོས་པའི་མོ།
32 བསམ་དབང་གི་ཏོ་[654]ཐ་མོ་དབང་ཆེན་པོ།
33 བིན་པར་ོད་དཔོན་དགོས་པའི་མོ།
34 བསམ་དབང་གི་ཏོ་[654]ཐ་མོ་དབང་ཆེན་པོ།
35 འལ་བར་ོད་དཔོན་དགོས་པའི་མོ།

87 Xyl: shar ra.
88 Xyl: ter sgra.
89 Xyl: dung.
3.8.3 Translation

1. *e ma ho*

2. In the space in front of [us], [within] the vast expanse of dense rainbow light,

3. In the middle of cloudbanks of deities of the three roots and *dgra blas*,

4. The father, the supreme being, the power of the Jewel that subdues the enemies,

5. Sits magnificently, with a joyful expression on his face.

6. Embodiment of all the protectors and victorious ones, endowed with compassion,

7. Body of the manifestation of the glorious and great one of Oddiyana,

8. Lord encompassing the three families, great lion, king,

9–10 Father, with overwhelming and powerful longing, devotion, and respect,

   [Your] children supplicate you from the depths of their hearts.

11 State of the luminous mind in which there is neither transformation nor change,

12 Great cloud of love and compassion, at all times dense [and]

13–14 Endowed with the compassion that violently brings down the [rain of] blessings

---

90 In verses 3 & 16, we read in text *lha rtsa gsum* instead of *rtsa gsum lha* but this occurs *metri causa* because of the structure of the octosyllabic verse.
For those who are to be tamed in accordance with their karma and aspirations,

15–17 By merely being mindful of the innumerable mandalas of the deities of the three roots,

In each of the belongings (sku chas) of the glorious dgra bla as well,

We receive the transmission of spiritual power and the supreme empowerment:

18 The dance beat of the heroic father is being stamped and stamped out—khrabs se khrab.\(^1\)

19 The song of the heroic mother is continuously rising and rising—sha ra ra,

20 The thundering neighs of the horse, the lord of the 'do steeds,\(^2\) are resounding and resounding—lhangs se lhang,

21 The laughter of the heroic dgra bla is roaring and roaring—chems se chem,

22 Towards those who are overwhelmed by devotion,

23 Don’t be idle now, don’t be idle, [but] confer [on them] spiritual power!

24 In this body, erect the heroic fortress of the dgra bla!

25 In this speech, establish the power of the magical voice!

---


\(^2\) See Helffer 1977: 145ff.,411ff. and Tsering 1979: 177 for the differences between 'do or mdo horses and other breeds.
In this mind, kindle the power of sheer knowing (rig rtsal), [the unity of] bliss and emptiness!

Accomplish inseparability from you, lord!

Repeat “Guru, think [of me]!” as much as possible, as well as “Guru, supreme being, wish-fulfilling jewel, think [of me]!”

Having recited [the mantra] om āḥ hūṃ vajra mahāguru mani rāja sarva siddhi phala hūṃ, one finally rests in the state of the body of reality that is beyond the intellect and inseparable from oneself. As one quickly receives spiritual power, the symbolic signs of the power of sheer knowing (rig rtsal) manifest.

After seven days of supplication, one definitely holds them.

[These symbolic signs] are caused to unfold from the sphere of that which must be directly experienced for oneself beyond conceptual mind (rang rig)

By the Vajra of sheer knowing, the attainment of the great lion lord’s supreme spiritual power.

At the end of the session, one should read aloud with a melodious voice the supplications for the [chapters of the epic about Gesar’s] horse race and submission of Hor.93 On the 23rd day of the third month of the Thams cad year.94 Virtue!

Maṅgalam

---

93 This refers to two prayers written by Mi pham (see Texts 48 & 49 in our catalog of Gesar rituals).
94 15/05/1887.
3.9 Mi pham, The King of Vajra life (Text 50)

3.9.1 Introduction

The following text, called the King of Vajra (rdo rje tshe rgyal), is a complete Gesar sadhana based on the original dgongs gter of Lha rig bde chen ye shes rol pa rtsal.\(^5\)

3.9.2 Edition

1 [658]![](image)

2 ![image]

3 ![image]

4 ![image]

5 ![image]

\(^5\) I would like to thank Larry Mermelstein who provided a translation of this text made by the Nālandā Translation Committee.
6  

---

96 Xyl: *khyam* instead of *phyam* as found in Lab mkhan chen ngag dbang dpal ldan’s version of this *sadhāna* (see f.8b,5).
97 Xyl: *phyings*.
98 Xyl: *stan cha*. Cf. Lab mkhan chen ngag dbang dpal ldan’s version of this *sadhāna* (*snyan zung la* see f.8b,5).
99 Xyl: *kod bad*. Cf. Lab mkhan chen ngag dbang dpal ldan’s version of this *sadhāna* (see f.8b,5).
100 Xyl: *gser gwa* instead of *gser sra* as found in Lab mkhan chen ngag dbang dpal ldan’s version of this *sadhāna* (see f.9a,1).
101 Xyl: *lcag*.
However, Lab mkhan chen ngag dbang dpal ldan’s version of this sadhāna (see f.9a,3) also reads rdil. I read za ’og ‘brocade robe’ since zab ber ‘brocade robe’ is mentioned in Lab mkhan chen ngag dbang dpal ldan’s version of this sadhāna (see f.9a,4) which is also derived from Lha rig bde chen ye shes rol pa rtsal’s original dgongs gter.

---

102 Xyl: rdil. The original dgongs gter of Lha rig bde chen ye shes rol pa rtsal (f.2a,1) reads rdel. However, Lab mkhan chen ngag dbang dpal ldan’s version of this sadhāna (see f.9a,3) also reads rdil.

103 Xyl: ba ’og. I read za ’og ‘brocade’ since zab ber ‘brocade robe’ is mentioned in Lab mkhan chen ngag dbang dpal ldan’s version of this sadhāna (see f.9a,4) which is also derived from Lha rig bde chen ye shes rol pa rtsal’s original dgongs gter.
Xyl: na ma mi.
20 སྨུན་པོ་བདུན་པར་བོ་དམིགས་པར་བཟོད་པར་པོ་
21 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
22 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
23 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
24 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
25 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
26 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
27 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
28 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
29 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
30 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
31 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
32 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
33 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
34 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
35 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
36 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
37 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
38 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
39 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
40 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
41 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
42 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་
43 སོགས་ཤིག་པའི་བསམ་དང་ཕྲོད་པར་བོ་

105 Xyl: rgang gling.
106 Xyl: bdud rtsi (?)—the second syllable is almost illegible apart from the vowel -i.
107 Xyl: glogs.
108 Xyl. ba rol.
106 འོ་ོག་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
107 འོ་ོག་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
108 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
109 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
110 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
111 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
112 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
113 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
114 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
115 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
116 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
117 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
118 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
119 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
120 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
121 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
122 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
123 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
124 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
125 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
126 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
127 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
128 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
129 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
130 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
131 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།
132 རོ་ལོ་བོས་ཁ་མ་ང་དང་ན།

109 Xyl: chud ma gzon.
133 ཐབས་འབིམ་འབྲས་དང་པོ་སྡོད་དཔོན་བཞུགས་པའི་ཚིག་
134 བྱུང་གོ་ལྟོན་འབྲས་དང་པོ་སྡོད་དཔོན་བཞུགས་པའི་ཚིག་
135 ཆུ་དྲུག་མཐོང་མདོ་དབུས་མི་སྐྱེལ་
136 ཀྲུང་ཁུང་འཚོལ་དང་བྲུག་མཐོང་མདོ་
137 ཁོག་འཛིན་ཆུ་ལྟེ་ལྟེས་མཐོང་མདོ་
138 ཀྲུང་ཁུང་འཚོལ་བོད་ལྟེས་མཐོང་མདོ
139 ཁྲུག་མཐོང་མཐོང་མཐོང་མཐོང་མཐོང་མཐོང་མཐོང་
140 འཁོར་ལེན་ཕན་ཐུབ་པོ་བཞུགས་པའི་ཚིག་
141 འཁོར་ལེན་ཕན་ཐུབ་པོ་བཞུགས་པའི་ཚིག་
142 འཁོར་ལེན་ཕན་ཐུབ་པོ་བཞུགས་པའི་ཚིག་
143 གསུམ[667]གཞིགས་བཞུགས་བཞུགས་ལོག་
144 ཁོན་ཚུལ་དཔག་སུ་ཡིད་དཔོན་བཞུགས

145 འཁོར་ལེན་ཕན་ཐུབ་པོ་བཞུགས་པའི་ཚིག་
146 འཁོར་ལེན་ཕན་ཐུབ་པོ་བཞུགས་པའི་ཚིག་
147 ཁྲུག་མཐོང་མཐོང་མཐོང་མཐོང་མཐོང་མཐོང་
148 འཁོར་ལེན་ཕན་ཐུབ་པོ་བཞུགས་པའི་ཚིག་
149 ཉིད་ཕྲུལ་དཔལ་དགོན་དགོན་བཟོ་བཟོགས་པའི་ཚིག་
150 འཁོར་ལེན་ཕན་ཐུབ་པོ་བཞུགས་པའི་ཚིག་
151 ཉེ་བཙུན་དབང་ཕྲུལ་དཔལ་དགོན་དགོན་
152 འཁོར་ལེན་ཕན་ཐུབ་པོ་བཞུགས་པའི་ཚིག་
153 དབང་སྐྱིད་བཞུགས་བཞུགས་ལོག་
154 འཁོར་ལེན་ཕན་ཐུབ་པོ་བཞུགས་པའི་ཚིག་
155 ཉེ་བཙུན་སྐྱིད་བཞུགས་བཞུགས་ལོག་
156 འཁོར་ལེན་ཕན་ཐུབ་པོ་བཞུགས་པའི་ཚིག་
157 ཉེ་བཙུན་དབང་ཕྲུལ་དཔལ་དགོན་དགོན་

110 Xyl: ’khrus ha.
111 Xyl: bskyil.
3.9.3 Translation

1 A supplication fulfilling the sacred pledge to Gesar, the great being, the king of Vajra life, called “The [Supplication] that Swiftly Accomplishes All Desires”.

2 Having purified with [the mantra] om śvabhāva-svabhāvaśuddho 'ham],

3 One should visualize oneself as Hayagrīva Padma Maheśvara with rDo rje thod phreng rtsal at the crown of one’s head.\[113\\]

4 In the space in front, amidst white clouds of ambrosia gathering languidly, at the centre of [Śakra’s] palace of Complete Victory, in the middle of the immeasurable celestial mansion of utter purity, on a throne ornamented with pure gold and jewels is a seat made of stacked brocade and silk [cushions], adorned with the symbol of crossed vajras.

5 On this [seat], at the centre of magnificently spread skins of demons and violators of the sacred pledge, the king of dgra blas, Gesar, shines with the splendour of youth, beautiful like the full moon that one never tires to contemplate. He is clad in pale blue silk clothes and a red gown, and the lower part [of his body] is wrapped in pale blue

\[112\] Schuh reads mttshams instead of mttshan ma (see Schuh 1973: 145).

\[113\] In the epic, Gesar declares that his wrathful form is Hayagrīva (see Helffer 1977: 535).
[and a] skin of a beast of prey. From loosely hanging hair flash forth rainbows and light rays. On his head is a cylindrical felt hat of the color of the moon, its top embellished with peacock feathers, a mirror, jewels, and five-colored ribbons as top ornaments. A beautiful smile illuminates his dignified face. He is adorned with an arrangement of jewels as earrings and a mirror and [a locket of] gold coins at his throat. He wears a necklace of white and red jewels and a garland of various kinds of flowers.

His right hand rests on a silk cushion.

At the time of magnetizing, one should change [this to]:

“He shakes and attracts the luminous essence\textsuperscript{114} of the world and the state of appeasement with the magical means consisting in the \textit{Vajra} hook and noose [in] his right [hand].”

At the time of protecting wealth, one should change [this to]:

“His right [hand] holds at the level of his heart the wishfulfilling gem [called] Powerful Sovereign.”

In the case of an arrow divination, one should change [this to]:

“His right hand fully stretched holds a white lotus.”

At the time of driving away or sending back [that which is negative] (bzlog pa), one should change [this to]: “His right [hand] decapitates the malevolent demons with the sword of meteoric iron”.

\textsuperscript{114} Mipham wrote a detailed instruction about this. See below the translation of this text (\textit{Gesar nor sgrub man ngag}—Text 73).
His left hand holds an iron bow and an iron arrow. On his two feet, he wears long-tipped armor boots. He is seated in the royal posture of enjoyment.

On his right, youthful rDo rje legs pa, wearing a turban of white silk, adorned with flowers, is holding divination pebbles. On his left, sMan btsun rdo rje g.yu sgron ma, wearing a turquoise diadem, is holding a mda’ dar in her right hand and, at the level of her waist, a kapāla of ambrosia in her left hand. In the front, the chief of the nine ma sang brothers, the great warlord Mig dmar in the attitude of wrath, wearing a greenish-red deep-sleeved cloak of brocade, measures an armspan of his magical red lasso. Before them are the four aspects of the great secret mother, the beautiful maidens beyond compare, surrounded by the hundred thousand servants of the sMan retinue. [All of them] are surrounded, all around, by a retinue of ten million armies of gods, hordes of the eight classes of gods, demons, and haughty spirits (dregs pa) such as the wild btsan spirits, yakṣas, nāgas, and gnyans, the countless armies of dgra blas and wer mas, like thick clouds completely pervading the sky, the earth, and the intermediate space.

Light rays shine forth from their three places marked by the three syllables and from one’s heart center, instantly inviting Gesar, the great being, together with his retinue, from [places] such as the abodes of the gods above, O rgyan (the pure realm of the holders of sheer

---

115 go lhram sna ring. In Tsering 1979: 174, these boots are called ‘iron boots that overpower the eight classes of gods and demons’ (sog lhram sde brgyad zil gnon). See also Chichlo 1981: 35.
knowing), the lands of India, China, Tibet, and in particular, the lands of mDo Khams and Gling, wherever those who perceive celestial fields aspire [to go], namely, from the places where they naturally abide. [The invoked deities] remain firmly in the deity of the sacred pledge (\textit{dam tshig pa/samayasattva}) in front of oneself.

\textit{om trim zhim khyim me mu tra 'bar ra ha\text{"u}m a la li}\(^{116}\)

[The beings of primordial knowing] dissolve [into the beings of the sacred pledge].

As one invites them with these words, diffusing incense smoke, [one should pronounce the following words] together with music:

\textit{kye!} With devotion and [pure] bonds, [we] invite [you] to this place and supplicate [you] to come! Remain firmly on this pleasing seat!

Finally, one recites the invitation mantra:

\textit{om trim zhim khyim me mu tra 'bar ra ha\text{"u}m a la li mo}

\textit{gtung ba khye a ho ye siddhi h\text{"u}m}

\textit{trak\text{"u}şer khyim}

\textit{srog dung dung ja}

\textit{sarva samaya thib thib 'du 'du dung dung yed yed ja ja}

---

\(^{116}\) Lha rig ye shes rol pa rtsal’s \textit{dgongs gter} reads \textit{om trim zhim khyi mi mu tra 'bar ra ha\text{"u}m a la li} but Lab mkhan chen nag dbang dpal ldan’s version of this \textit{sadhāna} has the same \textit{mantra} as Mipham’s text. Did Mipham use Lab mkhan chen nag dbang dpal ldan’s text or did Mipham have another manuscript or edition of Lha rig’s \textit{dgongs gter}?
[The beings of primordial knowing] dissolve [into the beings of the sacred pledge] with the words:

\[vajra\ \text{samaya}\ \text{jah}\]
\[ja\ \humm\ \bham\ \ho\]

Next is the unification [of the deity and the sādhaka] within the sacred bond (\(\text{dam bsre ba}\)):

\[\humm\]

Take care of [us]! You, the king of dgra blas,

10–12 In the presence of the lineage of the holders of sheer knowing Such as Avalokiteśvara, Padma thod phreng and the community of the lords of [the four] activities,

13–14 You promised to help yogis.

Without neglecting [your] sacred bond,

15 Accomplish until awakening all activities

16 That you have been appointed [to perform]!

17 \[vajra\ \text{samaya}\ \text{rakṣa}\ \humm\]

18 One should perform the mudra, as one says: \text{namo namāmi}.

19 One offers with these words:

\[\text{om trim zhim khyim saparivāra arghaṃ pādyāṃ puspe dhūpe āloke gandhe naividhya śabda aṣṭamaṅgalaṃ dravyaṃ\textsuperscript{11} liṅga saptaratna pañcakamaguna aṃṛta raktu baliṃta pūja} \]
\[pratīccha svāhā.\]

\textsuperscript{11} Xyl: draphyaṃ.
Gesar, Jewel that Fulfills all Wishes, embodying the three roots,

We supplicate you to consider us with compassion and loving-kindness!

Any violation and transgression of root and secondary pledges,
As well as body, speech, and mind commitments,
All negative actions, obscurations, and faults accumulated since beginningless time
Under the influence of confusion and ignorance,

We confess with deep remorse. Having cleansed and purified them,

Bestow the accomplishment consisting in supreme immaculate purity!

The offering-clouds of countless pure realms embracing the infinity of the universe (rab 'byams),

Flowers, incense, lamps, fragrant water,

Food and music, the five sense pleasures,

A rain of blood, arghaṃ, the flower of the senses,

The burnt offering (gsur) of [human] fat, onion soup, the oil lamp made of human fat,
The wrathful [offering] substances consisting of human flesh, trumpets made of a human femur, skull-drums,

The ambrosia of immortality (*aṃṛta*) and the red *rakta* of human blood,

The *gtor ma* that is *baliṃ*, the select food of the heroes, as well as beer,

A hundred thousand consorts embodying sheer knowing (*rig ma*) and bringing forth the four delights of great bliss (*bde chen dga’ ba bzhi*),

[As well as] cattle, ornaments, and possessions such as armor, weapons, countries, castles, and food,

The [seven] precious possessions of a universal monarch, secondary substances and various possessions—

The oceanic wealth of gods and humans—fill all directions.

Vast and ruthless armed forces are gathered like clouds,

Symbols, signals, arrow banners, and various flags are flashing like lightning,

The fierce war cries and drumbeats are resounding like thunder,

The weapons destroying the enemy are falling down like thunderbolts,
The rain of long life, prosperity, and jewels is falling and falling—*si li li*!  

Incense clouds of rainbow light and nectar are rising and rising—*ta la la*!  

The red light of love, joy, and power is shimmering and shimmering—*khyugs se khyug*!  

The manifesting power (*rtsal snang*) of bliss, heat, and sheer knowing (*rig pa*), is whirling and whirling—*shigs se shig*!  

The vast edgeless expanse (*thig le chen po*) of primordial knowing that playfully manifests (*rol pa*) as an illusion, [the unity of] appearance and emptiness,  

Equally permeates *samsāra* and *nirvāṇa*.  

By means of these offering clouds of all spontaneously present desirable objects,  

Life-force of the three roots, *Dharma* protectors, *dgra blas*, and *wer mas*,  

Great lion, king of the *Vajra* life,  

Together with [your] delightful consorts (*dgyes yum*), ministers, and attendants, and fierce armies,  

---

[Remaining] inseparable [from you],

We supplicate and worship [you] with trust and devotion, with complete loyalty, may the sacred pledge be fulfilled!

Purify transgressions within the constituent element of reality (dharmadhātu),

By means of the sacred bond of the secret Vajra, [the unity of] bliss and emptiness,

From the state that always remains beyond meeting and parting,

Swiftly bestow the glory of [all] accomplishments and all that is desired!

One should visualize that Gesar, the great being, together with his retinue, having sipped the nectar of the gtor ma with tongues that are tubes of light, is pleased and satisfied by this supplication.

Offer with [the following mantra]:

\[\text{oṁ trim zhim khyiṁ me mu tra 'bar ra haṁ}\]
\[\text{a la li la mo}\]
\[\text{gtung ba khye a ho ye siddhi ḥāṁ}\]
\[\text{trakṣer khyim sapārivara idaṁ baliṁta kha kha khāhi khāhi}\]

and with:

\[\text{oṁ akāro [mukhaṁ sarvadharmānāṁ ādyanuppannattvāṁ]}\]
One offers the nectar:

\[
\text{oṁ trim zhim khyim saparivāra arghaṃ [pādyam puspe dhūpe āloke gandhe naivedhyā] śabda pratīccha hoḥ.}
\]

Great guardian of the words of the teaching, Gesar, king of magic, together with your secret consort, ministers, attendants, dgrablas, wer mas, and protectors, accept this gtor ma of offering clouds.

Protect the teachings of the Buddha,

Glorify the [three] jewels!

Protect the royal domains of Dharma and saṅgha!

Dispel the degeneration of the world, and so forth.

Perform the activities that must be quickly accomplished!

Having entrusted [Gesar to perform] the [four] activities [by means of] general and specific requests, [one should] praise [him]:

Quintessence of all conquerors,

Dance of the magical displays (sgyu ’phrul gar) of Padma thod phreng, the three families, and the peaceful and wrathful deities,

Embodiment [of all deities of the three roots] into one,
Victorious one who destroys the *gshin* spirits and violators of the sacred pledge,

Gesar, Jewel that subdues the enemies, [we] shall praise you.

On account of the causes and conditions of pure karma and aspiration endowed with compassion,

You manifest in the form of the king of Jambudvīpa and Tibet.

Through mindfulness, you bestow the excellence of long life, prosperity, and all desirable objects,

King of the *Vajra* life, [we] praise you!

When fortunate persons have trust in you,

Their force, glory, power, and abilities blaze like the fire at the end of time.

You pulverize the spirit (*bla*) and life force (*srog*) of enemies, negative forces, and malevolent spirits (*'byung po*).

Great lion, tamer of demons, hero, [we] praise you!

With regard to the crown of all the mighty ones within the three worlds,

You reign supreme, [achieving] whatever you wish,

And send out in the ten directions the banner of fame.

White *wer ma* who accomplishes all desires, [we] praise you!

Today, in this place, on account of being inseparable from us—holders of sheer knowing and yogis—

[On account of] the sacred bond of the secret *Vajra*,

Insofar as we are gathered within the single essence of the life force,
Considering [this], swiftly accomplish [the activities you have been appointed to perform]!

Then [perform] the [mantra] recitation:

As one visualizes oneself as the yidam, light rays emanate from one’s own heart center and strike the edge of the white letter A that is seated on a sun and surrounded by the mantra garland at the heart center of the great being. As the five kinds of light shining forth from the [white letter A] dissolve into oneself, one becomes the sovereign who accomplishes—without obstructions, by merely wishing it—the activities consisting of the four actions.

While one visualizes this, focusing one-pointedly on this mental image, [one should recite the mantra]:

\[\text{oṁ trim ŋhim khyim me mu tra } 'b\text{ar ra haṁ} \]
\[a la li la mo \]
\[gtung ba khye a ho ye siddhi hâm} \]
\[traksêr khyim \text{gintâm puṣṭam}^{119} \text{vaśaṁ māravya siddhi hûm jah} \]

Having recited this as much as possible, one should finally recite the alphabet, the one-hundred-syllable [mantra], and the [mantra of] dependent arising.\(^{120}\) Then, it is sufficient to offer again several times in the way [explained] above.

\(^{119}\) Instead of \text{gintâm puṣṭam}, one usually finds \text{sântiṁ puṣṭiṁ} in the mantra.

\(^{120}\) The one-hundred syllable mantra is: “\text{oṁ vajrasattaṁ samayam anupālaya vajrasattaṁ tvenopatiśṭha dṛḍho me bhava sutoṣyo me bhava supoṣyo me bhava anurakto me bhava sarvasiddhim me prayacca sarvakarmasūca me cittaṁ śreyah kuru hûm ha ha ha ha hoḥ bhagavân sarvatathāgatavajra mā me muṇca vajrībhava mahasamayasattva ah}”. The mantra of dependent arising is: “\text{ye dharmā hetuprabhavā hetum teśaṁ tathāgato hy avadat teśaṁ ca yo nirodha evaṁ vādī mahāśramanaḥ svāha}.”
Then, regarding the enthronement: sprinkling nectar and waving the [five-colored] ribbons, chant these words as [you present] offerings, [burn] incense, and [play] music.

Activity of all the victorious ones, great hero,

Companion who completely subdues the negative forces that are hard to tame,

Supreme victory banner of the complete victory of positive forces,

As you, the great lion, the king of *dgra bla* and *wer ma*,

Are enthroned and empowered by us, yogis, as the one we rely upon until [we reach] the heart of awakening,

The nature of the wishfulfilling jewel, the banner of those who are victorious in all directions,

We remain inseparably merged within the *Vajra* sacred bond.

In the palace of great bliss that fulfills all wishes,

Supreme lord of the life force of worldly haughty spirits,

Holder of sheer knowing, power (*rtsal*) that is the most excellent ornament of Jambudvīpa,

We enthrone you as the innermost essence of yoga.

Great hero, subduer of the armies of demons, the enemies,

Holder of the sword, bow, and arrows of insight (*shes rab*),

Conqueror of hallucinations, the armies of *saṃsāra*, by means of mindfulness,

We enthrone you as the *Vajra* basic expanse that is of a single essence.
You, matchless in might and grandeur,
Who control the crown of [the king ruling] all beings within the three worlds,
Supreme lord of the *maṇḍala* of the *dgra blas* and *wer mas* of the universe, we enthrone you alone.

By swiftly bestowing to our hearts
The incomparable nectar of fearless intrepidity,
Similar to the drumbeat of victory of the armies of the king of gods,
Set the [four] activities into motion, sharply, quickly, without obstructions!

Having thus performed the enthronement, sprinkle again the select ambrosia:

*ḥṃ ḥṃ*

King of the *gdra blas*, king of the *Vajra* life,
The time has come [to accomplish] the sacred pledge that [you] have made long ago,
Do not let the hopes of us, yogis, be in vain,
Let the result of karma and aspirations be inevitable!
At this very end of [the age of the five] degenerations, this evil aeon,
The armies of negative forces, demons, *srin* and *’byung po* spirits, have been brought into existence,
And at the time when the power of the teaching of the supreme vehicle is waning,
We invoke you! Look [at us] with the eye of primordial knowing!
In the forest where the power of the enemies’ hordes is spreading
As adventitious obstacles that are the armies of the four extremes,

135–136  *Vajra* fire that swiftly subdues the enemy—craving,

Hero, think of your promise!

137  Crush to dust that which torments us holders of sheer knowing and yogis

138  As well as that which goes against the teaching of the great secret!

139  Gather long life, glory, and wealth as an inexhaustible treasure,

140  Perform the activities that are victorious in all directions!

141–142  Having pervaded the whole extent of that which holds wealth [—the earth—],

With the explanation and practice of the luminous *Vajra* essence,

143  Develop the transmission of *Dharma* as you secure it with auspiciousness!

144  Accomplish that which is in harmony with *Dharma*, whatever one wishes, just as desired!

145–146  From now until awakening,

Remaining inseparable from us like the body from its shadow,

147–148  Constantly endow us with that which is good and fight against wrongdoing,

Accomplish without obstructions the activities you have been appointed [to perform]!

149–152  In this very moment, establish in us

All the powers of the wondrous *dgra blas* and *wer mas*

That subjugate the three states of conditioned existence
With the glorious banner of positive and virtuous qualities!

153–156 Through the mere thought [of you], make [us] fulfill without obstruction

The activities of pacification, enrichment, subjugation, and destruction, according to circumstances,

And finally make [us] accomplish your mind

As the body of primordial knowing (ye shes sku) that spontaneously arises within the primordial basic expanse (gdod ma’i gzhi dbyings)!

157 In conformity with the authentic meaning of the Vajra words of Lha rigs bde chen rol pa rtsal’s mind treasure\(^\text{121}\), this was completed on the first dGa’ ba of the white half of the rGyal month of the water-bird year\(^\text{122}\) in the shrine that is reputed to be his [—Gesar’s—] place in rDzong gsar’s bKra shis lha rtse by Mi pham rnam par rgyal ba, who has obtained a few signs of the great hero’s transmission of power, at the age of twenty eight years. May this be a cause to glorify the teaching and teaching-holders of the great secret, atiyoga, as the pinnacle of existence.

\(^{121}\) See Text 1 in the catalog of Gesar rituals.

\(^{122}\) 19.01.1874 (Schuh 1973: 145).
3.10  Mi pham, The Innermost Essence of the Jewel that Subdues the Enemies (Text 67)

3.10.1  Introduction

The following text, dGra 'dul nor bu'i snying tig, is a quintessential practice of Gesar in which Mipham identifies Gesar with Mañjuśrī, Padmasambhava, and Kalkin Raudra Cakrin of the Kālacakra Tantra.\(^{123}\)

3.10.2  Edition

1  [702]

2  གྲ་འདུལ་བུའི་སྟད་དྲིག

3  རྒྱལ་མཚན་བོད་བི་ཕྱིན་ལྟེ་བོ

4  གཞིང་བཅོད་ལྟེ་བོ་བཤད་པོ་བོ

5  རྒྱལ་མཚན་བོད་བི་ཕྱིན་ལྟེ་བོ

6  གྲོང་གི་བཤད་པོ་བཤད་པོ་བཤད་པོ

7  རྒྱལ་མཚན་བོད་བི་ཕྱིན་ལྟེ་བོ

8  དབྱུར་དབེན་ནུས་པར་ཐེག་པར་བལ

9  རོལ་བཙུན་བོད་བི་ཕྱིན་ལྟེ་བོ

10 གྲོང་གི་བཤད་པོ་བཤད་པོ་བཤད་པོ

11 རྒྱལ་མཚན་བོད་བི་ཕྱིན་ལྟེ་བོ

12 གཞིང་བཅོད་ལྟེ་བོ་བཤད་པོ་བཤད་པོ

13 རྒྱལ་མཚན་བོད་བི་ཕྱིན་ལྟེ་བོ

14 གྲོང་གི་བཤད་པོ་བཤད་པོ་བཤད་པོ

15 རྒྱལ་མཚན་བོད་བི་ཕྱིན་ལྟེ་བོ

\(^{123}\) Raudra Cakrin is the Kalkin who will lead the armies of Shambhala against the mlecchas. Stein investigates parallelisms and junction points between the Gesar epic and the Kalacakra Tantra through the myth of Shambhala (see Stein 1959: 524–528).
16  The Innermost Essence of the Jewel that Subdues the Enemies

17  ā

18  [Your] nature is the Vajra of Gentle glory ('Jam dpal/Mañjuśrī) itself.

19  [Your] aspect is the form of the dgra bla sovereign of all that appears and exists.

20  In a former life, [you] were the holder of sheer knowing, Padmasambhava,

21  At present, [you] are the great lion, the power (rtsal) of the Jewel that subdues the enemies,

124 This seems to refer to rlung which is sometimes spelt klung (see Norbu 1997: 68ff.).
In the future, [you will be] Kalkin Raudra Cakrin.\textsuperscript{125}

Supreme deity of my heart, inseparable (\textit{dbyer med}) from me,

State of indivisibility endowed with the \textit{Vajra} voice,

Together with [your] armies of the four \textit{dgyes yums}, knights (\textit{dpa rtul}), \textit{dwang smans},\textsuperscript{126} \textit{dgra blas} and \textit{wer mas},

Haughty spirits of all that appears and exists (\textit{snang srid dregs pa}), the eight classes [of gods and demons] (\textit{sde brgyad}), [your] attendants,

With the ambrosia cloud of the outer, inner, and secret primordial knowing,

This supreme offering that is the fulfillment of the sacred bond,

I supplicate you, I worship you, I fulfill [the sacred pledge], I enthrone you, I praise you, I venerate you!

Armies of the powerful \textit{dgra bla},

Bring forth the power of compassion, might, strength, and ability!

Bring forth union with the natural state, my longevity, glory, and merits,

Good omens, fame and renown as the excellent horse of good fortune (\textit{rlung rta})!

Let this [horse] of good fortune roar like thunder across the three states of existence!

Subjugate with your brilliance all enemies and unfavourable conditions!

Raise the glorious banner of complete and universal victory,

\textsuperscript{125} The \textit{rigs ldans} are the Shambhala kings (see Stein 1959: 524–528).

\textsuperscript{126} gling gi dwangs sman mched brgyad.
[The glorious banner] of exaltation, at the summit of the three states of existence!

22–25 Having placed me at the center of the circle of power\(^{127}\) of [your four] activities,
Carrying the power of the \(\textit{Vajra}\) wind, the magic that accomplishes
Without obstruction whatever one desires, just as wished,
Grant me the kingdom of the two accomplishments!

27–30 That which, uttered as encouragements
By means of the sounds endowed with the eights aspects of the \(dgra\) bla’s laughter\(^{128}\),
Is the thundering voice of the one who is victorious in all directions,
Gathers in the blissful quintessential sphere of the syllable \(\text{dhī}\).

31 \(\textit{Maṅgalam}\)

---

\(^{127}\) \(\text{stobs kyi 'khor lo} \text{balacakra}\) means ‘dominion’, ‘sovereignty’, ‘supremacy’, ‘army’, or more literally ‘circle of power’ in reference to the extent of the a sovereign’s power. It is also the symbol of the sovereign, the wheels of whose chariots were free to roll everywhere he wished.

\(^{128}\) This probably refers to \(\text{khro bo'i bzhad pa bgyad}\), the eight kinds of laughter of the wrathful ones, such as joyful, threatening, enticing, subjugating laughters, and so on (see Boord 2002: 102).
3.11 Mi pham, Pith instruction on the wealth sādhana of Gesar (Text 73)

3.11.1 Introduction

The following text, *Gesar nor sgrub man ngag*, is a tantric pith instruction to increase wealth and prosperity, and according to Mipham, is the most profound of all Gesar practices to attract wealth. The backbone of this practice is the view of reality pointed out in rDzogs chen teachings.

3.11.2 Edition

1  [709]

2

3  [710]
3.11.3 Translation

1 Pith instruction of the wealth *sādhana* of Gesar

2 Natural luminosity, shining forth, pervading space like rain saturating pools and plants, a butter-lamp in which oil overflows, or like a mirror struck by sunlight, or the moon free from clouds, the radiant manifestation of the splendor (*bkrag mdangs*) of the container (i.e. the
inanimate universe) and its contents (i.e. the animate universe) intensifies further and further, a hundred, a thousand times. The sparkling splendor is flickering and flickering—shig shig, the luminosity is shimmering and shimmering—mer mer.\textsuperscript{129} In the manner of something that is not the result [of one’s practice but the way things are], one should visualize it as completely filled with the quintessential ambrosia (bdud rtsilamṛta), completely saturated [with it] to the point of overflowing: one should visualize it as something that is not contained in its own place. Then from there, in the way mercury is separated from dust, the entire luminous ambrosia (dwangs bcud) that represents this, is slowly attracted inwardly like metal to a magnet as it dissolves [into oneself]. One should repeat [this instruction] many times in accordance with this [method of] transforming and gathering [the quintessential elixir]. This is the pith instruction called “Great Cloud of Jewels”.

Next, one should visualize the entire universe and its contents as the unique and vast edgeless immensity (ti la ka chen po gcig) of the blazing five lights, good fortune (phya), and prosperity (g.yang). All fields [of experience], infinitely pervaded by natural luminosity glow and glow—kyi li li—with a dazzling vermillion color on account of the heat of bliss (bde drod), then dissipate [into light]. Undifferentiated from this, as the radiant manifestation of the

resonance (sgra gdangs) of one’s own fame and glory pervading the entire universe and its contents, that which is naturally resounding, the trichiliocosm, resonates and resonates—\textquotesingle ur \textquotesingle ur—like the beat of kettle drums, and tinkles and tinkles—ting ting, and crashes and crashes—chil chil—in various sounds such as [those produced by] percussions, thunder, or cymbals. Vibrating and vibrating—shig shig, quaking and quaking—yom yom, the vessel of the inanimate universe is shaking from all sides.

Then, one should visualize that:

- all beings, all who possess a body and a mind, namely, the ambrosia (bdud rtsi/\textit{am\textsc{r}ta}) [contained in the vessel of the inanimate world], are pervaded by the joy and bliss conducive to one’s own achievement.
- as [all beings] are excited and dancing as if intoxicated by alcohol, they are all brought under one’s power.

This is the pith instruction that enchants the three worlds by means of deep bliss. Repeat this many times.

Finally, as the entire container [of the inanimate universe] and its contents [the animate universe] dissipate [into luminescence], all rainbow lights and bright colors dissolve into oneself and the accomplishment substances. Then, since they have been completely absorbed within the indestructible vital essence (thig le) at one’s heart center, as there is no chance for them ever to be released or to decline, resting in equanimity within the great original condition (gnyug ma
*chen po*, the [unity of] sheer knowing and emptiness (*rig stong*) that is suchness, the indestructible secret *Vajra*, is the pith instruction of the *Vajra* sealing mark stamped with the seal of indestructibility.

This is the most profound pith instruction among the Gesar practices for accomplishing wealth, the quintessential elixir, the blood of dākinīs.

*Ithi rgya.*
3.12 Mi pham, The swift accomplisher of [the four] activities (Text 85)

3.12.1 Introduction

The following text, called *gSol lo chen mo*, is one of the most important rituals written by Mipham about Gesar. The *gSo lo chen mo* is often considered to be one of Mipham’s *gter mas*. It was composed over three years. Since it is thought to be extremely powerful, it is usually only practiced on particular occasions, not on a regular basis.

3.12.2 Edition

1 [732] ungalowkhang thishan phagshung dkonjug

2 tsho kar nga bzhedul

3 ston phyin sengtsed rang du khyung phyin

4 phag phug phug shing rgyal phyin

5 ston phyin gnyen 130 kung ngan

6 phag phug phug shing rgyal phyin

7 tag phrug shing brgyud shutral

8 phag phug phug shing rgyal phyin

9 ston phyin sengtsed rang du sphyin

10 phag phug phug shing rgyal phyin

11 phag phug phug shing rgyal phyin

130 Xyl: nan gyi.
39  རྣམ་པར་བསལ་བའི་སྤང་དྭབ་ནུ་མི་དྲི་མ་བར་བསལ

40  རྣམ་པར་བསལ་བའི་སྤང་དྭབ་ནུ་མི་དྲི་མ་བར་བསལ

41  ་Xyl: rdo rje'i (see Helffer 1977: 411).

42  རྣམ་པར་བསལ་བའི་སྤང་དྭབ་ནུ་མི་དྲི་མ་བར་བསལ

43  རྣམ་པར་བསལ་བའི་སྤང་དྭབ་ནུ་མི་དྲི་མ་བར་བསལ

44  རྣམ་པར་བསལ་བའི་སྤང་དྭབ་ནུ་མི་དྲི་མ་བར་བསལ

45  རྣམ་པར་བསལ་བའི་སྤང་དྭབ་ནུ་མི་དྲི་མ་བར་བསལ

46  རྣམ་པར་བསལ་བའི་སྤང་དྭབ་ནུ་མི་དྲི་མ་བར་བསལ

47  རྣམ་པར་བསལ་བའི་སྤང་དྭབ་ནུ་མི་དྲི་མ་བར་བསལ

48  རྣམ་པར་བསལ་བའི་སྤང་དྭབ་ནུ་མི་དྲི་མ་བར་བསལ

49  རྣམ་པར་བསལ་བའི་སྤང་དྭབ་ནུ་མི་དྲི་མ་བར་བསལ

50  རྣམ་པར་བསལ་བའི་སྤང་དྭབ་ནུ་མི་དྲི་མ་བར་བསལ

51  རྣམ་པར་བསལ་བའི་སྤང་དྭབ་ནུ་མི་དྲི་མ་བར་བསལ

52  རྣམ་པར་བསལ་བའི་སྤང་དྭབ་ནུ་མི་དྲི་མ་བར་བསལ

53  རྣམ་པར་བསལ་བའི་སྤང་དྭབ་ནུ་མི་དྲི་མ་བར་བསལ

54  རྣམ་པར་བསལ་བའི་སྤང་དྭབ་ནུ་མི་དྲི་མ་བར་བསལ

131 Xyl: rdo rje'i (see Helffer 1977: 411).
132 Xyl: thugs kar (see Norbu 1997: 51ff.).
133 cong sa instead of cang seng (see Norbu 1997: 56ff.).
134 Xyl: thugs rja.
82 འལ་འདོད་འཕགས་པ་དཔག་པའི་འཆད་ཐོབ་མཆོག་ཅིག་གི་བརྙན་སྤོང་སྤྱི་

83 འཕྲེལ་མིའི་འཕགས་པ་གཞི་

84 འཕྲེལ་མིའི་ཐབས་སི་བཟོང་སྤྱི་

85 འཕྲེལ་མིའི་སྤྱི་མཆོག་ཞིི་

86 འཕྲེལ་མིའི་སྤྱི་མཆོག་ཞིི་

87 འཕྲེལ་མིའི་སྤྱི་མཆོག་ཞིི་

88 འཕྲེལ་མིའི་སྤྱི་མཆོག་ཞིི་

89 འཕྲེལ་མིའི་སྤྱི་མཆོག་ཞིི་

90 འཕྲེལ་མིའི་སྤྱི་མཆོག་ཞིི་

91 འཕྲེལ་མིའི་ཕང་ཕྲོད་སྤྱི་

92 འཕྲེལ་མིའི་ཕང་ཕྲོད་སྤྱི་

93 འཕྲེལ་མིའི་ཕང་ཕྲོད་སྤྱི་

94 འཕྲེལ་མིའི་ཕང་ཕྲོད་སྤྱི་

95 འཕྲེལ་མིའི་ཕང་ཕྲོད་སྤྱི་

96 འཕྲེལ་མིའི་ཕང་ཕྲོད་སྤྱི་

97 འཕྲེལ་མིའི་ཕང་ཕྲོད་སྤྱི་

98 འཕྲེལ་མིའི་ཕང་ཕྲོད་སྤྱི་

99 འཕྲེལ་མིའི་ཕང་ཕྲོད་སྤྱི་

100 འཕྲེལ་མིའི་ཕང་ཕྲོད་སྤྱི་

153 Xyl. ngoms pa.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Text Content</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>བོད་ལྷན་བརྡ་བཞིན་ནི་བོད་ཀྱི་ིར་གྱིས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106</td>
<td>དབེ་བོ་བོད་ལྷན་བརྡ་བཞིན་ནི་བོད་ཀྱི་ིར་གྱིས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>བོད་ལྷན་བརྡ་བཞིན་ནི་བོད་ཀྱི་ིར་གྱིས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>བོད་ལྷན་བརྡ་བཞིན་ནི་བོད་ཀྱི་ིར་གྱིས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>བོད་ལྷན་བརྡ་བཞིན་ནི་བོད་ཀྱི་ིར་གྱིས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>དབེ་བོ་བོད་ལྷན་བརྡ་བཞིན་ནི་བོད་ཀྱི་ིར་གྱིས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116</td>
<td>བོད་ལྷན་བརྡ་བཞིན་ནི་བོད་ཀྱི་ིར་གྱིས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118</td>
<td>བོད་ལྷན་བརྡ་བཞིན་ནི་བོད་ཀྱི་ིར་གྱིས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>བོད་ལྷན་བརྡ་བཞིན་ནི་བོད་ཀྱི་ིར་གྱིས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122</td>
<td>བོད་ལྷན་བརྡ་བཞིན་ནི་བོད་ཀྱི་ིར་གྱིས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124</td>
<td>བོད་ལྷན་བརྡ་བཞིན་ནི་བོད་ཀྱི་ིར་གྱིས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126</td>
<td>བོད་ལྷན་བརྡ་བཞིན་ནི་བོད་ཀྱི་ིར་གྱིས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128</td>
<td>བོད་ལྷན་བརྡ་བཞིན་ནི་བོད་ཀྱི་ིར་གྱིས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>བོད་ལྷན་བརྡ་བཞིན་ནི་བོད་ཀྱི་ིར་གྱིས།</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
155 ཕིག་འཛིན་སོགས་པོ་[739]

156 སེམས་ཅན་སྲིད་པོ་བཙུན་པོ་བཟང་པོ་དབྱོངས་པོས་སིང་གིས་གང་པོ་བཙུན་པོ་དབྱངས་པར་མཁྱེན་པ་མཛད་མཁྱེན་པར་འཛིན་བོ་མཛད་ཐོག་མཆོག་

157 སྤེལ་གྱི་གྲོི་སེམས་བོིག་

158 ཨུ་བོ་སྟ་སྟན་ཤེས་པའི་

159 འཕྲོ་བཟང་གནས་པོས་ཐོག་མཆོག་

160 བོད་ཀྱི་ཕྲུལ་ཡིས་པའི་

161 སྤེལ་དཔལ་གྲིང་ཐོག་

162 བོད་ཀྱི་ཕྲུལ་ཡིས་པའི་

163 སྤྱིར་བཟང་སྟོན་པོས་ཐོག་མཆོག་

164 བོད་ཀྱི་ཕྲུལ་ཡིས་པའི་

165 སྤྱིར་ཆུང་བོིག་

166 བོད་ཀྱི་ཕྲུལ་ཡིས་པའི་

167 སྤེལ་བཟང་ཆུང་བོིག་

168 བོད་ཀྱི་ཕྲུལ་ཡིས་པའི་

169 སྤྱིར་བཟང་མཛོད་[136]སིང་བོིག་

170 སྤྱིར་བཟང་བོིག་

171 སྤྱིར་བཟང་ལོ་བོིག་

172 སྤྱིར་བཟང་བོིག་

173 སྤྱིར་བཟང་ངོ་བོིག་

174 སྤྱིར་བཟང་ངོ་བོིག་

175 སྤྱིར་བཟང་ལོ་བོིག་

176 སྤྱིར་བཟང་ལོ་བོིག་

177 སྤྱིར་བཟང་ོ་བོིག་

178 སྤྱིར་བཟང་ོ་བོིག་

136 Xyl: rdzongs.
179 བོད་ལྷག་ཁུལ་ཁྱབ་བུ་ལྡེག་པ་མཚན་

180 རོགས་རྫོང་བུ་སེམས་དཔའ་ཚང་

181 གཉེན་ཆེན་ཕན་ཁྲིམས་བྱེད་པར་

182 རྡེ་བཞི་ཕན་ཚུལ་གྲོལ་གྱུར་

183 རིག་ལྷུན་ཐོང་ལྷུན་ཕྱི་མཚན་

184 རྡེ་བཞི་ཕན་ཚུལ་གྲོལ་གྱུར་

185 སེམས་གྲོས་ལ་བ་མི་བོད་ཡིག་

186 རོགས་རྫོང་བུ་སེམས་དཔའ་

187 འསངས་བསྒྲུབ།[740]མེ་ཏེ་སོགས་

188 རིག་ལྷུན་ཐོང་ལྷུན་ཕྱི་མཚན་

189 རྡེ་བཞི་ཕན་ཚུལ་གྲོལ་

190 རྡེ་བཞི་ཕན་ཚུལ་གྲོལ་གྱུར་

191 རོགས་རྫོང་བུ་སེམས་དཔའ་

192 རྡེ་བཞི་ཕན་ཚུལ་གྲོལ་

193 རྡེ་བཞི་ཕན་ཚུལ་གྲོལ་

194 རོགས་རྫོང་བུ་སེམས་དཔའ་

195 རིག་ལྷུན་ཐོང་ལྷུན་ཕྱི་མཚན་

196 རྡེ་བཞི་ཕན་ཚུལ་

197 རིག་ལྷུན་ཐོང་ལྷུན་ཕྱི་

198 རིག་ལྷུན་ཐོང་ལྷུན་ཕྱི་

199 རིག་ལྷུན་ཐོང་ལྷུན་ཕྱི་

200 རིག་ལྷུན་ཐོང་ལྷུན་ཕྱི་
137 Xyl: mi g.yang.
138 Xyl: cod paN.
245 ཞིག་ལ་དང་དགོས། [742] 246 ཞིག་ལ་དང་དགོས། 247 ཞིག་ལ་དང་དགོས།
248 ཞིག་ལ་དང་དགོས། 249 ཞིག་ལ་དང་དགོས།
250 ཞིག་ལ་དང་དགོས། 251 ཞིག་ལ་དང་དགོས།
252 ཞིག་ལ་དང་དགོས། 253 ཞིག་ལ་དང་དགོས།
254 ཞིག་ལ་དང་དགོས། 255 ཞིག་ལ་དང་དགོས།
256 ཞིག་ལ་དང་དགོས།
257 ཞིག་ལ་དང་དགོས། 258 ཞིག་ལ་དང་དགོས།
259 ཞིག་ལ་དང་དགོས། 259 ཞིག་ལ་དང་དགོས།
260 ཞིག་ལ་དང་དགོས། 261 ཞིག་ལ་དང་དགོས།

139 Xyl: shag.
140 Xyl: gzhugs.
345  སྒྲུབ་ཙུམ་མི་དོ་དང་། 142 སྐོར་གྲོལ་ཉིད། 346  སྐྱེལ་ཡུལ་བོད་དཔལ་བཞི་དོན་ཉིད།
347  སྒྲུབ་ཙུམ་མི་དོ་དང་པོ་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད། 348  སྐྱེལ་ཡུལ་བོད་དཔལ་བཞི་དོན་ཉིད།
349  སྒྲུབ་ཙུམ་མི་དོ་དང་སྒྲུབ་ཙུམ་མི་དོ་དང་ཉིད། 350  སྐྱེལ་ཡུལ་བོད་དཔལ་བཞི་དོན་ཉིད།
351  སྒྲུབ་ཙུམ་མི་དོ་དང་པོ་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད། 352  སད་རིགས་[746]་གུང་གི་དོན་ཉིད།
353  སྒྲུབ་ཙུམ་མི་དོ་དང་པོ་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད། 354  སྐྱེལ་ཡུལ་བོད་དཔལ་བཞི་དོན་ཉིད།
355  སྒྲུབ་ཙུམ་མི་དོ་དང་པོ་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད། 356  སྐྱེལ་ཡུལ་བོད་དཔལ་བཞི་དོན་ཉིད།
357  སྒྲུབ་ཙུམ་མི་དོ་དང་པོ་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད། 358  སྐྱེལ་ཡུལ་བོད་དཔལ་བཞི་དོན་ཉིད།
359  སྒྲུབ་ཙུམ་མི་དོ་དང་པོ་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད། 360  སྐྱེལ་ཡུལ་བོད་དཔལ་བཞི་དོན་ཉིད།
361  སྒྲུབ་ཙུམ་མི་དོ་དང་པོ་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད། 362  སྐྱེལ་ཡུལ་བོད་དཔལ་བཞི་དོན་ཉིད།
363  སྒྲུབ་ཙུམ་མི་དོ་དང་པོ་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད། 364  སྐྱེལ་ཡུལ་བོད་དཔལ་བཞི་དོན་ཉིད།
365  སྒྲུབ་ཙུམ་མི་དོ་དང་པོ་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད། 366  སྐྱེལ་ཡུལ་བོད་དཔལ་བཞི་དོན་ཉིད།
367  སྒྲུབ་ཙུམ་མི་དོ་དང་པོ་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད། 368  སྐྱེལ་ཡུལ་བོད་དཔལ་བཞི་དོན་ཉིད།

142 Xyl: skyu.
143 Xyl: mda’ mo.
Xyl: rdo rje’i (see Helffer 1977: 411).
145 Xyl: che.
146 cong se instead of cang seng (see also v.50 cong sa, cf. Norbu 1997: 56ff.).
147 Xyl: rdo rje’i (see Helffer 1977: 411).
3.12.3 Translation

1 A supplication and offering called “The swift accomplisher of [the four] activities”

2 I pay homage to the glorious Heruka.

3 In order to quickly complete an important matter

4 —When, for instance, something essential must be accomplished,

5 [Such as on the occasion of] a dispute about a large territory, or when something important is at stake,

7 Having gathered any offering substances and possessions,

6 Such as the [golden] drink, the select portion of food, gtor ma, and silk ribbons,

8 And having generated a sharp and steady state of non-distraction, supplicate the dgra bla.

9 Great [negative] karmas are blocked and it is impossible to be deceived.

10 Fulfill your pledge, receive the empowerment and the accomplishments.

11 Having raised the drink and the food, pronounce these words accompanied by cymbals played at intervals:

[1. Invocation and supplication]

12–14  ho! please pay heed [to me]! ho! please pay heed [to me]! ho! please pay heed [to me]!

16  [You] who manifest the power (rtsal) that is compassion, the unceasing play (rnam rol)
From the unproduced nature, the constituent element of reality (*chos kyi dbyings*),

Victorious Lord, Lake-Born Vajra,\(^{148}\) embodiment of the magical manifestation of the peaceful and wrathful deities of the three families,\(^{149}\)

Gesar, great being, holder of sheer knowing (*rig 'dzin*), Jewel that subdues the enemies,\(^{150}\)

Essence of all the awakened ones,

Pervading Lord of the peaceful and wrathful yidams,

Master of the hosts of dākinīs and ma mos,

Chief of the protectors and guardians (*srung ma*) of the teaching,

Wealth that is the essence of the boundless assembly of the deities of wealth,

Supreme sovereign of the *dgra blas*,

Supreme vital essence of the *wer mas*,

Supreme ruler of the eight classes [of gods and demons],

Supreme master of the vital essence of malevolent spirits,

Supreme holder of positive forces,

Supreme *dgra bla* of the sentient beings,

Supreme glorious refuge of [all] sentient beings,

Supreme vital support\(^{151}\) of the holders of sheer knowing,

Supreme support of Buddhists and Bon pos,

\(^{148}\) *mtsho skyes rdo rje* is an epithet of Guru Rinpoche.

\(^{149}\) The three tantra families are the *padma*, the *vajra*, and the *tathāgata* families.

\(^{150}\) *nor bu dgra 'dul*, an epithet of Gesar.

\(^{151}\) Literally, ‘life beam’ or ‘supporting pillar’.
Tamer of demons, mighty lord of [the four] activities,
Destroyer of all negative forces,
Executioner of all those who have violated their sacred pledge,
Great slaughterer of all demons and *srin mos*,
[You] who, outshining the three realms of existence with the dance of your joyful body,
Bring under your power the three worlds with the thundering reverberation of your majestic speech,
*Mandala* of knowing and kindness unfolding from the vast expanse of the luminous mind,
[You] who gather like billowing clouds spiritual power (*byin rlabs*) and accomplishments merely by means of deliberate awareness (*dran pa*),
Who, riding ‘Wild Hemione’, the lord of ‘do steeds, wander within the intermediate space,
[You] who, contained in [the syllable] ‘ki’ and rejoice in [the syllable] ‘bswo’,
Adhere to pledges (*chad*) and esteem *Dharma*,
Who bring down the rain of desired wealth and jewels from the whip ‘Accomplisher of [All] Aspirations’ in your right hand,
Who subdue the enemies of the three worlds [with] the spear in your left hand and brandish the banner of the *dgra blas*.

---

152 *rKyang rgod*, ‘Wild Hemione’, is the name of Gesar’s horse.
[You who, wearing] the absolutely perfect dgra blas’ gear on your body,

Emanate cloud-banks of dgra blas and wer mas,

Dharma protector of the surrounding positive forces,

Glorious refuge of the pure lands,

Surrounded by entire armies of dgra blas, wer mas, thugs kars and cang sengs,\textsuperscript{153}

Careful guardian of the Buddha’s words who distinguishes between right and wrong due to the power of compassion, aspiration, and dependent arising,

Although your luminous mind is devoid of the attributes of mental proliferations (spros pa),

[You] who, taking delight in the best worldly offerings, make your way to victory over men,

Who, protecting those who keep their pledges as if they were your own children, bring down the dgra blas’ life-force and prosperity (tshe g.yang),

Who, reducing to nothing those who have violated their sacred pledge, take their hearts as wrathful victuals,

Who, when worshipped, are united [with us], when accomplished, are connected [with us],

When exhorted, are the unsurpassed sovereign in terms of swiftness and greatness,

\textsuperscript{153} It is possible that these deities were originally batallions or regiments of the Tibetan imperial army.
[You] who, not remaining deaf to [the appeal of] those who rely upon you,
Do not turn away from the activities you have been appointed [to perform],
Who, auspicious and close to our heart,
Are filled with blessings and fast in manifesting your might,
Who, having previously [accumulated] good actions, have the ultimate power to bind,
Who lead [us] from one happiness to the next, to the land of the great awakening,
Great treasury of the two accomplishments, great lion, Jewel that subdues the enemies, [we] supplicate you!
Great dgra bla of Buddha’s teaching, [we] supplicate you!
Holder of sheer knowing, supreme ornament of the world (’dzam gling), [we] supplicate you!
Owner of the sword, bow, and arrows of insight (shes rab), [we] supplicate you!
[You] who, being free from afflictions, repel [all] attacks, [we] supplicate!
Hero who subdues demons, enemies, and the demons’ armies, we supplicate you!
Dispeller of the fears of the four demons, we supplicate you!
From this moment until supreme awakening,
You, king of the protectors of the teaching, great lion, precious gem that increases [wealth] as one desires, will remain

Within the great victory banner of immutable hope and trust!

You, king of the *dgra blas*, great lion, lord of mountains—Mount Meru, will adhere

To the ground of the immutable sacred pledge!

You, king of the *wer mas*, great lion, *maṇḍala* of the sun and moon, will remain

Within the space of perfect approach and accomplishment.

If the protector of the teaching that [we] rely upon is not wrong,

The support of [our] devotion does not err,

And the deity of our veneration does not deceive,

Great lion, wish-fulfilling gem, together with [your] armies of *dgra blas* and *wer mas* of primordial knowing (*ye shes*),

Having considered the perpetual absence of union or separation, the great *Vajra* pledge,

Look upon us with a joyful face!

Take care of us with smiling eyes!

Release the symbolic signs (*brda*) with the speech of laughter!

With your joyful mind, be the lord of the places, bodies, and possessions of us, masters and disciples together with our followers!

Clearly show the value of accomplishments!

---

154 The Tibetan text reads *bcas pas* but I translated *bcas pa* due to the syntax of the sentence.
Accomplish as we wish the activities you have been appointed [to perform]!

Produce the activity you pledged [to accomplish]!

Support the activity of [our] three doors [body, speech, and mind] with that which is propitious and auspicious!

Arouse experiences and realizations!\(^{155}\)

Increase primordial knowing (\(ye\) \(shes\)) and positive qualities!

Bestow right now the vast accomplishments of [long] life and merit, glory and wealth, fame and renown, good fortune (\(phywa\)) and prosperity (\(g.yang\))!\(^{156}\)

Show the meaning of the true nature of reality (\(chos\ \(nyid\ \)\(kyi\) \(don\)), the secret of sheer knowing (\(rig\ \)\(gsang\))!

Confer spiritual power, the empowerment of primordial knowing (\(ye\) \(shes\))!

Make all deeds become \(Dharma\) practice!

Make all encounters meaningful [with regard to \(Dharma\)]!

Let all supreme and ordinary accomplishments without exception be achieved spontaneously (\(lhun\ \)\(gyis\ \)\(grub\) \(pa\)), without effort \(('bad\ \)\(med\))!

---

\(^{155}\) \(nyams\) refers to fleeting experiences corresponding to perceptions, thoughts, feelings, moods, any kind of ephemeral mental event arising. \(rtogs\ \)\(pa\) means 'understanding [the real nature of things]', or 'realization'.

\(^{156}\) Norbu 1997: 63–65 explains in details the difference between \(phywa\) and \(g.yang\). The former corresponds to wealth, good fortune, etc., the latter to the principle of \(phywa\) which is the capacity for an individual to experience good fortune, auspiciousness, and prosperity (see also Bellezza 2005: 387 n.170 and Pommaret 1994: 660).
[2. Exhortation to perform the activity of pacification]^{157}

99    *ho!* You, great king of the *dgra blas*, who, having at times the aspect of appeasement and clarity,

100   Shine like the moon with [your] joyful face,

101   Who, amused by the dance of the joyful activities [accomplishing] all desires,

102   Ravish minds by [merely] being seen,

103   Stimulate the fruition [of accomplishments] by being [merely] remembered,

104   Bring glory into being by being accomplished, lord of deathlessness and long life,

105   Who brings down the rain of ambrosia (*bdud rtsilamrta*),

106   Great one who augments the prosperity that increases happiness, joy, and fame,

107   Source of all that is auspicious,

108   Basis of all good fortune,

109   Support of all positive qualities,

110   Great essence of all that is excellent and glorious,

111   Jewel that eliminates degeneration,

112   Ambrosia (*bdud rtsilamrta*) that subdues diseases,

113   Conqueror giving relief to the weak ones, great divine sound of drums,

114   *Vajra* life, Glorious king of [all] wealth and prosperity, surrounded by your retinue, together with the armies of *dgra blas* and *wer mas*, we supplicate you!

---

^{157} In this part of the ritual, Gesar appears in the form he takes in the *pra* rituals of divination, see texts 58, 59, and 60. These texts have been translated in chapters 3.13, 3.14, and 3.15.
Again, body of luminous purity,

[You] who appear as a sixteen year old boy.

From the sphere of rainbow clouds in the sky,

White and radiant, resembling pure crystal,

Holding a jewel lamp in your right hand,

Intensely illuminating the three worlds,

Holding a white silver mirror in your left hand,

Clearly revealing the three states of conditioned existence,

Performer of the dance of the heroes of the male lineage,

Singer of the symbolic song of the heroines of the female lineage,

Lord of the subtle light,

All-illuminating king of the wer mas,

Who, dwelling in the magical abode of the gods, the state of conditioned existence,

Set forth the higher cognition (mgon shes) of magical prescience,

Who reveal right and wrong in the sphere of appearance and conditioned existence,

Great lord of the four kinds of primordial knowing and eight visions,

Who, holding the magical torch of primordial knowing,

---

158 The following description corresponds to Gesar’s manifestation as A dkar ’od kyi wer ma. See texts 58, 59, and 60 translated in chapters 3.13, 3.14, and 3.15 for a detailed presentation of Gesar in this particular form.

159 shes bzhi, probably for ye shes bzhi (the outer, inner, and secret gnoses, together with the primordial knowing of reality, de kho na nyid ye shes).

160 This probably refers to the perceptions corresponding to the eight kinds of consciousness (aṣṭa-vijñāna). These are the five kinds of consciousness arising from the sense organs, corresponding to sensory perceptions, together with the mental consciousness (yid kyi rnam shes), the consciousness of the stained intellect (kliṣṭamanasnyon yid rnam shes), and the base consciousness (ālāyavijñānaṅkun gzhi rnam shes).
Glowing and shining with the flame of insight (*shes rab*),

Opens the door leading to the secret of sheer knowing (*rig pa*) and higher cognitions,

[You] who extract the great treasure that is the fearlessness of the luminous mind,

Luminous *wer ma* of the radiant white A, great lion among men, sovereign of magical manifestations illuminating the entire *samsāra*, together with [your] armies of *dgra bla* and *wer mas*, we supplicate!

With an ocean of the three white and three sweet substances,

Silk ribbons, ornamental banners,

The melodious cadence of drums and the thunder of cymbals,

Offering-clouds of pleasant objects of all kinds,

Snow-mountains of food—flour and butter,

Flowers, immense clouds of incense smoke,

Rivers of water for drinking and washing feet,

The dwelling place of Tibet which is the luminous mirror (*me long*),

Continual rainfalls of scented water and ambrosia (*bdud rtsi/amṛta*), and so on,

With all these infinite outer, inner, and secret offerings, imagined or actually arranged [here],

Great king of the *dgra bla*, Gesar, Jewel [that subdues the enemies], *wer ma* of the luminous white A, together with your retinue,

We worship you!

---

161 In divination rituals, Gesar is invoked in a mirror. See texts 58, 59, and 60 translated in chapters 3.13, 3.14, and 3.15 for a detailed presentation of this practice.
We enthrone you!
We praise you!
We fulfill the sacred bond!
We offer you the heroes’ drink!
We admit having impaired our pledges!
We rejoice!
We invoke the sacred pledge!

Dispel all misfortunes leading to degeneration such as diseases, evil influences, obstacles, and misfortunes for us, holders of sheer knowing and yogis,
As the sun subdues darkness!

When there is an enemy, send a warning!
When poison threatens us, send medicine!
In the rugged places where there is no path, draw a path!
On rivers without bridges, build a bridge!
Make us meet good things on mountain passes!
Subdue bad things from the bottom of valleys!
Do not set in motion idle talk and gossip!
Do not dispatch unfavorable circumstances and obstacles!
When we are depressed, inspire us!
When we are oblivious, exhort us!
Make mountains where we [can] flee!
Make forests where we [can] hide!
Make castles and fortresses that we can rely upon!
Make incorruptible understanding arise!

Sharpen our weapons! Instruct the ignorant!

Show [what is to be seen] to those who do not see!

Accomplish the daytime activities!

Keep watch at night!

Help us within the fundamental ground of being (gzhi)!

Welcome us and bid us farewell when we travel!

Reveal the heart of insight (shes rab) and primordial knowing (ye shes)!

Disclose the experience of the secret of sheer knowing, dependent arising!

Make our self-confidence as [vast as the] sky!

Increase our power like the wind increases the fire at the end of time!

Play the musical instruments of joy, happiness, and fame!

Show the way to the inexhaustible treasure of glorious qualities!

During daytime, make the sun of whatever appears in our perception shine!

At night, make the moon of dreams visible!

At [every] moment, let the light-rays of the arising experiences blaze forth!

Show clearly the three states of conditioned existence!

Expose vividly the three realms!

Reveal directly to our minds all that is right and wrong in the three worlds!
Accomplish our hopes for the objects we desire!

[3. Exhortation to perform the activity consisting in increasing]

ho! [You] who, having at times the appearance of magnificence and plenitude,
Abide as the sovereign who morphs into all that appears or exists, [just] as desired,
Within the unfathomable palace in which the glorious qualities of the four phases of conditioned existence\textsuperscript{162} are gathered,
[You] who, holding in your right hand the [gem called] ‘Powerful Sovereign’ that grants all wishes,
And in your left hand the vase of the inexhaustible treasure,
Play in the pleasure grove of wish-fulfilling trees,
Who are the lord of the treasure that grants all wishes,
The sovereign of the jewel of the Ratna [family],
India and Tibet’s lord of wealth,
The iron hook that gathers food and riches,
[You] who, in the sky, bring together the clouds of the gods’ ambrosia of prosperity,
In the intermediate space, assemble the fog of the auspicious signs of prosperity,
And on earth, gather the klus’ prosperity in the garudas’ (dmu zhang) ocean,

\textsuperscript{162} srid bzhi, the four phases of conditioned existence are: birth, from birth until death, death, the intermediate state.
Who bring down the rain of prosperity (rma g.yang) and all that is desired,

[You] who are the great banner of renown,

The one whose fame resonates like a hundred thunders,

The lord of the luminescent essence of the four states of conditioned existence,

The foundation of good fortune, prosperity, and wealth,

The musical instrument playing all that is desired, in all its variety,

[You] who, ravishing the minds by being [merely] seen, and who attract prosperity with your splendor,

Conquer all that is all good,

Making your way to the diadem of all that is great,

[You] who, completely victorious in all directions, are the great one who turns the wheel of [the four] activities,

Spindle of Dharma and worldliness, taller than the sky,

Encompassing [all] power and wealth, larger than space,

Great lion who grants all wishes, precious gem that increases [wealth] as one desires, master of the hidden treasures of samsāra, together with [your] armies of dgra blas and wer mas,

With a mountain of food,

An ocean of drinks,

Manifestations of wonderful material objects,

Hundreds of harmonious melodies,

Clouds of perfume and incense smoke,
Great banquets of exquisite food,
A celebration of delightful sensations,
An offering of marvellous mental objects,
Accumulation of clouds carrying the six desirable objects,
Arrangements of the substances ensuring good fortune (phywa cha) and prosperity (g.yang),
In brief, with all the wealth of the four states of conditioned existence—without exception,
With offering clouds gathering in these fluttering, flickering, shimmering, and quivering appearances the valuable aspects of samsāra, nirvāṇa, and the path, the complete glorious qualities of the [luminous] essence, and displaying the Vajra of bliss and emptiness, with [these] pure accumulations of offering clouds of all-pervading manifestations of all that appears and exists, all that is desired,
We worship you,
We enthrone you!
We praise you!
We fulfill the sacred bond!
We offer you the heroes’ drink!
We admit having impaired our pledges!
We rejoice!
We invoke the sacred pledge!
Bestow upon us—holders of sheer knowing and yogis,
The food of the supreme vital essence!
Bestow the clothes of supreme magnificence!

Bestow the wealth of the supreme prosperity!

Raise the banner of glory!

Blow the conch shell of fame!

Bring down the rain of all that is desired!

Make flow the ocean of good fortune and prosperity.

Extract the quintessence of wealth and abundance,

Increase more and more the continuity of sheer knowing, [as well as] food, wealth, possessions, and power!

Make all business activities profitable!

Secure the victory when something is at stake!

Brandish the banner [bolstering] bravery!

Blow the conch-shell in the market place!

Attract the victory in disputes and games!

Make us equal with that which is extraordinary!

Bring out what is special from the ordinary!

Praise the triumph of all that is good!

Set up the causes and conditions for all that is excellent!

Suppress the main [afflictions blocking] all that is supreme!

Subdue those who want to compete, and bring down [victory upon us],

In brief, as you have put in us the force, power, and courage of the great lion, the *dgra blas* and *wer mas*, we supplicate you to make [us]
obtain right now the complete accomplishments of that which is excellent.

[4. Exhortation to perform the activity consisting in magnetizing][163]

258 *ho!* [You] who, having at times the engaging appearance of passion,

259 Set in motion and attract[164] the luminous essence of the four states of conditioned existence with the magic skillful means of the iron hook and the noose in the vast expanse of red light pervading all the animate and inanimate,

260 [You] who, by setting the three worlds in motion with the dance of your joyful body, ravish the minds,

261 Who, by captivating the three worlds with the clear and melodious chant of your laughter and speech, bind them into servitude,

262 Who, by displaying yourself (*rol*) in the luminous essence and the glorious qualities of the four states of conditioned existence, playfully give us sidelong glances,

263 Who, with lovely shades (*mdangs*), perform a joyful dance,

264 With the melodies (*gdangs*) of fame, sing merry songs,

265 And, dissolving the vessel [of the world] and its contents [sentient beings] into red light,

266 Transform the inanimate and animate worlds as if you were playing musical instruments,

267 [You] who, bursting out laughing with the thunder of the *dgra blas*,

---

163 See text 73 translated in chapter 3.11 for a detailed presentation of the practice evoked in this part of the ritual.

164 *gugs* has various meanings: ‘to bring back’, ‘to summon’, ‘to attract’, ‘to magnetize’. 
Wave the banner of the wer mas,

And set in [rapid] motion like a lightning flash the playful dance (*rol rtsed*) of your diverse appearances,

Endowed with the mind of *Vajra* passion, the [unity of] bliss and emptiness,

Irresistibly capturing the attention of all that manifests and exists,

Great lion, wish-fulfilling gem, powerful king, ruler of *samsāra*,
together with your armies of *dgra blas* and *wer mas*,

With an ocean of medicinal ambrosia (*bdud rtsi\_amṛṭa*),

A mountain of *gtor mas* that fulfill all wishes,

A river of bright red *rakta*,

Great clouds of excellent perfume and *bsang*,

Postures and steps of *Vajra* dances,

The melodies of pleasant songs,

The dances (*bro ra*) of heroic beings,

The music of the consort of sheer knowing (*rig ma*) who ravishes the mind,

The offerings of experiences of bliss and emptiness,

The cymbals of the original bliss occurring at the time of melting,\(^{165}\)

With the delight of pleasure, joy, and sexual union, and so on, this pure offering of the infinitely vast basic space [displaying itself] as the *Vajra* melody of [the unity of] bliss and emptiness of all that appears and exists,

---

\(^{165}\) This refers to the *gtum mo* practice.
We worship you!
We enthrone you!
We praise you!
We fulfill the sacred bond!
We offer you the heroes’ drink!
We admit having impaired our pledges!
We rejoice!
We invoke the sacred pledge!
Produce in the body of us holders of sheer knowing and yogis [this] enchanting majesty!
Bestow to our voice the capacity [to speak] true words!
Kindle in our mind the state of non-distraction of bliss and emptiness!
Overcome all that we see!
Reduce into servitude the three worlds,
Shake the hearts of people!
Stir the minds of people!
Bring appearances under your power!
Serve the luminous ambrosia (bdud rtsilamṛta) of the four states of conditioned existence!
Raise up on the throne the lion mane of all that is great!
Attract here the glory and wealth of all that is good!
Establish [us] on the throne of the great coronation!
Deliver into our hands everything we wish!
In brief, bestow right now the complete accomplishment of the empowerment, the great Vajra bliss that brings under control all that appears and exists!

[5. Exhortation to perform the activity of wrathful subjugation]

ho! [You] who, having at times a terrifying and wrathful appearance,

Churn the [blood]pool resulting from the ripping of demons (dbud) and vampires (srin po) with the bow and arrows of insight and skillful means,

[You] who, cutting off the heads of deceitful vampires with the sword made of meteoric iron,

Piercing with the Vajra lance the hearts of those who have violated their pledge,

Gouging out the eyes of the enemies with Rudra’s elephant hook,

Severing at its root the enemy’s life with the curved flaying knife,

Served by the excellent marksmen of your guard,

Strike the vital points of the eight classes of gods and demons,

[You] who, gathering together the lineage of male protectors like a rockfall,

Hurl the lineage of female protectors like an arrow,

Emanate wer mas [like] meteors,

Unite the dualistic aspects of all that appears and exists,

Ignite the fire at the end of time with the sun and moon of your eyes,

---

166 Kartrika.
And emit thunderbolts and hail with the red lightning flash of your tongue,
Who, making the ocean of rakta swell with the waves of your mouth,
Swirl the black winds of the end of time from the air inside your nose,
Gather like clouds armies of dgra blas from the hero’s fortress of your body,
Spurt the poisoned arrows of hail and frozen rain from the snow mountains of your teeth,
And light up the great fire of Vajra wrath from the luminous state of your mind,
Who, greatly thirsting for Rudra’s flesh, blood, and vital breath, partake of them,
[You] who are of unexcelled and unrivalled majesty within the realm of all that appears and exists, identical with the rdo rje weapon, the wrathful one that liberates, the power of the Jewel that subdues the enemies, together with his retinue, the ocean of wer mas who tame the enemies and obstacle-makers, with mountains of flesh belonging to the enemies who have violated the sacred plegdes,
An ocean of blood,
With banks of bones, with dark forests made of their vital organs,
Foul swamps of marrow,
Mists of steamy breath,
Clouds of great burnt offerings (gsur).
Together with the flower of the sense organs, the riches consisting in the enemies’ wealth, power, capacity, possessions, and the excellent offerings [placed] in your blazing mouth,

We worship!

We enthrone!

We praise!

We fulfill the sacred bond!

We offer the heroes’ drink!

We admit having impaired our pledges!

We rejoice!

We invoke the sacred pledge!

Consider with your blazing gaze

That which harms and torments us—holders of sheer knowing and yogis,

The enemies of bad thoughts and attitudes, anger,

All damaging and obstructing forces, wherever they remain!

Take out their hearts with the conjuring hook!

Fetter their arms and legs with the binding noose!

Chop off their heads with the hacking sword!

Perforate their vital organs with the piercing spear!

Take their lives with the impelling arrows!

Roast their hearts with the fire at the end of time!

Cut in pieces their bodies with the Vajra weapon!

Bring down the poisonous rain of diseases and wars!
Repel bad omens with magic!

Root of the male lineage, completely eradicate!

Womb of the female lineage, completely exsiccate!

Destroy the armies of negative thoughts, attitudes, and forces!

Make fall on those who have subdued us the poisoned arrows of negative thoughts!

Use upon our enemies the weapon of negative states of mind!

Not resting for years and months, liberate us within days and hours!

Cast back all black magic, curses, negative thoughts, and hostile attitudes!

Turn upside down—under the earth—our sworn enemy!

Soar in the firmament of the white gnyan!

Kindle our power, strength, and force [to make them] like the fire at the end of time!

In brief, wrathful one, bring to fullest expression the activity of direct subjugation, just as desired!

[6. Exhortation to perform the activity consisting in spontaneously accomplishing]

ho! [You] who, having at times the playful display (rol pa) of genuine magic power,

Wander everywhere across the heavens, earth, and intermediate space,

And master all the [four] activities that pervade everything, everywhere (rab 'byams),

[You] who, bestowing the accomplishments by being merely evoked,
Travel like lightning by being merely invoked,

Who, united [with us] within the sacred pledge by being merely accomplished,

Engage in action by being merely exhorted,

Vajra of the great lion, armies of dgra blas and wer mas, with outer, inner, and secret offering clouds, the excellent ambrosia of primordial knowing, and unsurpassed [manifestations] arising from the play (rnam rol) of Samantabhadra,

We worship you!
We enthrone you!
We praise you!
We fulfill the sacred bond!
We offer you the heroes’ drink!
We admit having impaired our pledges!
We rejoice!
We invoke the sacred pledge!

[7. Invocation of Gesar’s retinue]

Lord of ‘do steeds, skillful ‘Wild Hemione’, we supplicate you!
Four secret dGyes sde, we supplicate you!
Mig dmar, we supplicate you!
Dam can rDo rje legs pa, we supplicate you!
sMan btsun rDo rje g.yu sgron, we supplicate you!
rMa rgyal rDo rje drag rtsal, we supplicate you!
Elder brother Dur khyung dkar po, we supplicate you!
Armies of the gods of the heavens, we supplicate you!
Powerful father Ger mdzo, we supplicate you!
Armies of the gnyan of the intermediate space, we supplicate you!
Younger brother Klu sbrul ’od chung, we supplicate you!
Armies of the nāgas of the underground, we supplicate you!
Aunt [gNam] dgung sman rGyal mo, we supplicate you!
Maṇḍala of the sNang srid Ma mos, we supplicate you!
Srid lcam tha le ’od dkar, we supplicate you!
Godesses of the five elements, we supplicate you!
Gods of the klung rta\textsuperscript{167} of magical transformation, we supplicate you!
Thirteen [cang sengs that are] youthful messengers, we supplicate you!
Nine Dra ma brothers of the dgra blas, we supplicate you!
Thirteen dgra bla-protectors, we supplicate you!
Three brother dgra blas, brothers and sisters, we supplicate you!
\textit{d}Gra blas of the inanimate and animate universe, we supplicate you!
\textit{d}Gra blas of the various activities, we supplicate you!
Five deities of the individual\textsuperscript{168} that are powerful protectors, we supplicate you!
\textit{d}Gra blas that sustain all that is positive, we supplicate you!
Three-hundred sixty thugs kars, we supplicate you!
\textit{Cang} sengs, [eight] powerful deities of the road (lam lha gnyan po \textit{mched brgyad}), we supplicate you!

\textsuperscript{167} Note the spelling klung rta in the text instead rlung rta.
\textsuperscript{168} This refers to the ’go ba’i lha, namely, mo lha, srog lha, dgra lha, pho lha, yul lha (see Jovic 2010).
Wer mas of the heaven, earth, and intermediate space, we supplicate you!

dGra blas and wer mas that are [Gesar’s] attendants, we supplicate you!

Dakis, [eight sisters] maidens of Gling ([gling gi] dwangs sman [mched brgyad]), we supplicate you!

Hosts of warriors (dpa’ brtul) and heroes, we supplicate you!

Armies of gods that are [Gesar’s] magical emanated servants, we supplicate you!

Haughty spirits (dregs pa) of all that appears and exists that take [Gesar’s] orders, we supplicate you!

dGra blas and wer mas of all that appears and exists, we supplicate you!

In brief, entire armies of the dgra blas and wer mas, without a single exception, protectors manifesting as primordial knowing, actions, and the external physical world within the mandala of the great lion that subdues the enemies, with this vast imagined offering-cloud and the prepared substances,

We worship you!

We enthrone you!

We praise you!

We fulfill the sacred bond!

We offer you the heroes’ drink!

We admit having impaired our pledges!
We rejoice!
We invoke the sacred pledge!

[8. Invocation of the Dharma-protectors of primordial knowing]

kye! Dharma protectors of primordial knowing.
Powerful in your activities,
All of you supreme rulers of the world considering [us] with knowledge,
And looking at us with affection, from this moment until supreme awakening, with your great powers, force, and abilities, accomplish for us and those around us without interference all the objects of our desire, just as wished, without neglecting the activity of protecting and guarding!

bswo bswó
As the cloud of dgra blas of all that appears and exists, and wer mas is thickening,
In the midst of laughter like the dragon [thunder], the roar of joyful laughter,
Gesar, Jewel that subdues the enemies, body of primordial knowing (ye shes sku)
That is endowed with the majestic radiance of twelve suns,
Ride the powerful magical display of the seven great winds of the end of time, the lord of the 'do steeds, the wise (pher po) ‘Wild Hemione’!
As the variegated equipment of the dgra blas shines brilliantly,
By emanating and gathering the armies of dgra blas and wer mas
In the fortress of intrepidity that is the indestructible Vajra body,

Increase the good omens and the force of rlung by means of mere deliberate awareness (dran pa)!

With a state of mind of unchanging devotion and commitment,

With cloud-banks of offerings of various samaya substances,

We supplicate you, we worship you, we fulfill the sacred pledge!

We enthrone you! We praise you! We offer you the heroes’ drink, ambrosia!

From the state of the Vajra mind, [the unity of] appearance and emptiness

Beyond meeting and parting, you look at us who have unflagging faith!

Emanation of Padma[sambhava] and the three awakened families, master of malevolent spirits,

Great lion, together with your retinue of dgra blas and heroes,

You ignite like fire spiritual power, strength, and capacity

In our yogi’s body, speech, and mind!

In the three realms, high [flies] the great banner of [your] glory,

In the three worlds, [all-]pervading is the great thunder of [your] renown,

Outshining enemies and hostile factors in all directions,

Perform the activities of those who are victorious in all directions!

Thus, in the place where the thunder of the joyful dgra blas and wer mas resounds,
Bringing down the great rain of abundance, happiness, joy, and fame,
You gather the good omens [announcing] a golden age,
When, in one-pointed concentration, we appoint you to protect us as the heroic dgra bla
Through a ritual such as this upon which we have focussed our mind,
You must uplift, and never let fall, the great banner
Of joy that accomplishes all that is desired, just as wished.

samaya

This supplication and offering was written down according to the circumstances within three years of the fifteenth rab byung (rab tshes): 1877-78 (dbang phyug), 1879-80 (myos ldan), 1880-81 (rnam gnon), as it arose in the mind of the wer ma bSe ru ’od ldan dkar po.
On account of having brought it to thorough completion on the eighteenth day of the sa ga month of the iron dragon year,¹⁶⁹ may the cause and conditions that glorify the teaching of the victorious one as the pinnacle of conditioned existence become excellent!

¹⁶⁹ May 27th 1880.
3.13 Mi pham, Scroll about the profound and secret oral tradition of bSe ru ’od Idan dkar po (Text 58)

3.13.1 Introduction to texts 58, 59, and 60

The following three texts are about *pra*, a mirror-divination related to Gesar in the form of sNang srid kun gsal (‘the one who completely illuminates all that appears and exists’). According to some sources, *pra* or *pra sa na pa ta* is of Indian origin (from *prasenā*, ‘clear light’ or *pratisenā*) and would have been initiated by Padmasambhava, but according to other sources, similar Bon rituals were already practised in Tibet prior to the arrival of Padmasambhava in Tibet.¹⁷⁰ The use of the term *pra phab pa* for *pratisenā* is nonetheless attested in Kālacakra and Cakrasaṃvara Tantras where the divination support can be a sword, water, a lamp, or a mirror.¹⁷¹ Nebesky-Wojkowitz 1998: 462–464 shows the different phases of a Gesar divination in which a child is used to read the signs appearing in the mirror. The following texts are the rituals corresponding to Nebesky-Wojkowitz’s explanations. However, from the secret perspective of the ritual, the mirror symbolizes the primordially pure nature of mind in which appearances and reflections manifest as the power of the mirror to reflect.

3.13.2 Edition

¹⁷⁰ See rGyal/Rino 2008: 54–55 & 225 for a detailed account of the source-texts.
2 བབ་

4 ར་བ་

6 ས་བ་

8 ར་མ་

10 མ་བ

12 མ་བ

14 མ་བ

16 མ་བ

18 མ་བ

20 མ་བ

22 མ་བ

24 མ་བ

26 མ་བ

28 མ་བ

3 ར་མ་

5 ར་མ་

7 ར་མ་

9 ར་མ

11 ར་མ

13 ར་མ

15 ར་མ

17 ར་མ

19 ར་མ

21 ར་མ

23 ར་མ

25 ར་མ

27 ར་མ

29 ར་མ

172 Xyl. phyags shen.
30 बुद्धको उपासना जीवन बदले
31 नस्तिक्षात्मक जीवन बदले
32 निर्जीव जीवन जीवन बदले
33 नस्तिक्षात्मक जीवन बदले
34 निन्जीव जीवन जीवन बदले
35 नस्तिक्षात्मक जीवन बदले
36 निन्जीव जीवन जीवन बदले
37 नस्तिक्षात्मक जीवन बदले
38 बुद्धको उपासना जीवन बदले
39 नस्तिक्षात्मक जीवन बदले
40 बुद्धको उपासना जीवन बदले
41 नस्तिक्षात्मक जीवन बदले
42 निन्जीव जीवन जीवन बदले
43 नस्तिक्षात्मक जीवन बदले
44 निन्जीव जीवन जीवन बदले
45 निन्जीव जीवन जीवन बदले
46 नस्तिक्षात्मक जीवन बदले
47 बुद्धको उपासना जीवन बदले
48 बुद्धको उपासना जीवन बदले
49 निन्जीव जीवन जीवन बदले
50 नस्तिक्षात्मक जीवन बदले
51 निन्जीव जीवन जीवन बदले
52 नस्तिक्षात्मक जीवन बदले
53 निन्जीव जीवन जीवन बदले
54 नस्तिक्षात्मक जीवन बदले
55 बुद्धको उपासना जीवन बदले
56 नस्तिक्षात्मक जीवन बदले

173 Xyl: breng.
174 Xyl: bra.
175 Verses 54 & 55 have apparently eight syllables instead of seven.
Scroll about the profound and secret oral tradition of bSe ru ’od ldan dkar po

bswo

The body of illusory manifestation (sku sprul pa) that is spontaneously occurring (rang byung) compassion from the basic space (dbyings), the great fundamental sameness (mnyam pa chen po) of appearance and emptiness,

The ultimate of eternity (g.yung drung) beyond change, the very nature of the innermost sphere (thig le),

Is Gesar, the Power of the Jewel that subdues the enemies.

On the top of the mountain rMa rgyal,176 in the East,

---

176 This refers to the mountain rMa chen spom ra in Eastern Tibet (upper region of the Yellow River). The toponym rma rgyal stresses the divine nature of the mountain which is a gnyan, Gesar’s protector (see Chayet 2003: 23 and Stein 1959: 124).
In a celestial citadel, a dome of rainbow light,
The luminescent palace of all that appears and exists,
The deity of the supernatural divination of the gShen of Prediction (phywa gshen),
The wer ma of the light of the white A (a dkar ’od),
With the youthful charm of a sixteen year old boy,
Having the appearance of pure crystal, white and luminous,
Carries in his right hand a jewel lamp,
And brightly illuminates the three states of existence.
In his left hand, he holds a mirror of ratna,
[In which] all that is concealed appears clearly.
Dressed with ribbons, ornaments, and rainbow-hued clouds,
He majestically stands on a carpet of flowers.
The five goddesses, [his] delightful secret consorts,
The five lights, moving to and fro,
Hold a mirror and the excellent vase that satisfies all needs,
Looking with passion at the father-consort (yab).
All around, a hundred thousand wer mas gleaming like mirrors,
Perform Vajra songs, gestures, and dances.
The blissful heat and shining brilliance is sparkling and sparkling—a la la.

177 I translated a dkar ’od ‘light of the white A’ and not ‘white light of A’ because the name of the wer ma invoked in these rituals is bSe ru ’od ldan dkar po and not bSe ru ’od dkar can.
178 kun gsal means both ‘brilliant’ and ‘mirror’.
Medicinal incense and fragrant scents are wafting and wafting—\textit{thu lu lu},

The flower [rain] of rainbow clouds is falling and falling—\textit{tho lo lo},

As [we] pay homage with devotion to the one who brings the accomplishment,

Please come without delay to this place

When [we] invoke [you] by means of the sacred pledge.

We offer the three aromatic plants\textsuperscript{180}

And clouds of white incense.

We offer the excellent drinks consisting of

Milk, water, \textit{chang} made of rice, and the three sweets.

We offer the lamp that subdues the darkness of ignorance,

The \textit{mda’ dar}, the mirror, butter-flour, the select portion of food,

And the present of the six objects of desire.

When you merge the sacred bond (\textit{dam bsre}) with the \textit{Vajra} life force

By means of the melody of the deity that arises as a naturally manifesting illusion,

[Just like] the all-illuminating moon reflected in water,

Take the sacred pledge of \textit{mantra} as the crucial point [of your practice].

Thus, visualize the \textit{mantra}-garland revolving around the A that is white like the moon at the heart of the deity:

\textit{bswo a dkar wer ma khyod de ’du gsal sa le bra phob svāhā}\textsuperscript{181}

Having thus recited, [say]:

\textsuperscript{180} See Norbu 1997: 250 where five kinds of aromatic plants are mentioned.

\textsuperscript{181} This mantra could be partially translated: “\textit{bswo wer ma} of the white A, incorporate yourself in the surface [of the mirror], manifest clearly, perform the divination \textit{svāhā}.”
We invoke the deity by means of the sacred bond and faith.
Luminous deity of all that appears and exists,
When we invite you from the open expanse of space,
Do not break the sacred pledge, come here right now!
For the purpose of carrying out the yoga,
[If] we shouldn’t ask you, father, who should we ask?
[If] you do not speak to us, your children, who will?
The intermediate space is full of lights and rainbows,
Symbols and melodies are chiming and chiming—khro lo lo,
Dances and [various] manifestations are whirling and whirling—shigs se shig,
The shining brilliance of the male protectors is sparkling and sparkling—a la la,
The beautiful smile of the female protectors is glimmering and glimmering—lhabs se lhabs,
Confer spiritual power
To the body, speech, and mind of the divination support as well as mine!
Display the illusory show of all that appears and exists!
Perform right now the divination!
Having thus offered a bsangs, danced with the cymbals and the mda’ dar, allow the divination support to look into into the mirror, and so on. 

182 The divination support (pra rten), or medium, is the child in whom the wer ma manifests.
written, in the way it suddenly arose in the mind of the *wer ma* ‘Se ru ’od ldan dkar po¹⁸³. *ihi rgya*

¹⁸³ Mipham spells the *wer ma*’s name ‘Se ru as well as *bSe ru*, which means ‘unicorn’ (see Norbu 1997: 56–58).
### 3.14 Mi pham, The Clear Jewel Mirror (Text 59)

#### 3.14.1 Edition

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>[686]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.14.2 Translation

1. An offering of purification by smoke to the *wer ma sNang [srid kun]* *gsal*\(^{184}\) called “The Clear Jewel Mirror”

2. One empowers the offering substances, whatever one has.

3. *ḥūṃ hrīḥ*

4. In the body of primordial knowing (*ye shes*), the sheer knowing (*rig pa*) that naturally occurs from basic space,

5. The divine castle of the *wer ma sNang srid kun gsal* (‘the one who completely illuminates all that appears and exists’),

6. The lord (*sku rje*), the jewel that accomplishes all purposes, the king,

7. The *wer ma* of the light of the white A, together with his retinue,

8. With tenderness for his children,

9. Having swiftly come to this place out of affectionate compassion,

---

\(^{184}\) Lit. ‘Mirror of all that appears and exists’ or ‘The one who completely illuminates all that appears and exists’. 
Displays in a tangible manner miraculous signs and omens.

Having joyfully accepted the substances of the sacred pledge, the outer, inner, and secret offerings,

That have been prepared and imagined, and that fill the entire space,

As well as the clouds of the ambrosia of primordial knowing, the great bliss of the state in which everything is of a single essence,

And having produced the power of magic,

Increase the blissful heat in the element of sheer knowing related to the water wind,

Reveal the vision showing the infallible nature of dependent arising,

Open the gate to the magic that makes all that appears and exists totally clear.

Having revealed the expanse (dbyings) of the faultless single eye of primordial knowing,

As the state in which all-pervading clarity is completely unimpeded (zang thal), unobscured by any veil,

Please increase as wished and without any obstruction

The power and strength that accomplish great benefits for the teaching and beings.

Heroic Gentle glory (‘Jam dpal/Mañjuśrī), illusory dance (gar) of primordial knowing,

Great hero who subdues the enemies, the armies of demons,

Who annihilates the attacks of ignorance and afflictions
With the symbol of the seal [of primordial knowing] (phyag rgya) consisting in the bow, the arrow, and the sword of insight (shes rab),

sNang [srid kun] gsal, king of the wer maš, together with your retinue,

Power of the compassion that naturally arises from the state of fundamental sameness (mnyam nyid),

Set in motion the phantasmagoria net ([sgyu] 'phrul gyi dra ba) of the lucid divination (rno [thong])!

As you have entered my devoted heart,

I supplicate you to accomplish the two kinds of benefit that fulfill all wishes.

You are the one within whom the time of the sacred bond has come.

samayā.

Thus, on account of this offering, the power of the clairvoyance (mngon shes) that perceives the nature of all that appears and exists as unadulterated will spread beyond directions. This was auspiciously written by the wer maš 'Se ru 'od ldan dkar po on the tenth day of the sixth month of the year of the wood-monkey, from the delightful canopy of the auspicious deathless light that appears by itself. Sarva maṅgalam.
3.15 Mi pham, Offering to the *wer ma* of the light of the white A (without title—Text 60)

### 3.15.1 Edition

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Text</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>[691]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><strong>[113x196]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><strong>[113x240]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><strong>[113x284]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><strong>[113x328]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><strong>[113x372]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td><strong>[113x416]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td><strong>[113x460]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td><strong>[113x504]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td><strong>[113x548]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td><strong>[113x592]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td><strong>[113x636]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td><strong>[113x680]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td><strong>[113x724]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td><strong>[113x768]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td><strong>[113x812]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td><strong>[113x856]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td><strong>[113x900]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td><strong>[113x944]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td><strong>[113x988]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td><strong>[113x1032]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td><strong>[113x1076]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td><strong>[113x1120]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td><strong>[113x1164]</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

255
3.15.2 Translation

1

*om aḥ hum hriḥ*

2–4

In the vast expanse where the utterly pure five lights gather

From the state of the naturally occurring great primordial knowing

[that encompasses] all phenomena, the manifesting power (*rtsal snang*) of sheer knowing and emptiness free from limitations,

In the vessel of the inanimate universe together with its contents,

5

The immeasurable [celestial palace] (*gzhal yas [khang]*) of the blazing
great bliss that illuminates everything,

6

The messenger of the victorious activity of the three roots,

7

The great lion, the *wer ma* of the light of the white A,

8

White and radiant like crystal, having one face and two hands,

9

Holds a brilliant jewel lamp and a mirror,

10

Adorned with white silk clothes, rainbow clouds, and flowers.

11

The five aspects of [his] delightful consort hold a *mda’ dar* and a mirror.
Around [them] are the hundred thousand *wer mas* of sNang srid [kun] gsal (‘the one who completely illuminates all that appears and exists’).

Performing various *Vajra* dances, gestures, and songs,

They exert themselves in the best of luminous mirror divinations (*pra*) by means of awareness (*dran pa*).

Having produced the forces of blessings, power, and strength,

When [sNang srid kun gsal’s] continuum together with his complete retinue is invoked,

One knows with the mind of the utterly unimpeded state (zang thal) that is the [unity of] bliss and emptiness.

The dance of the delightful body is whirling and whirling—*shigs se shig*,

The symbolic song of the speech filled with laughter is rippling and rippling—*kyu ru ru*,

The flower rain of rainbow clouds is falling and falling—*tho lo lo*,

The manifesting power (*rtsal snang*) of blissful heat and sheer knowing is whirling and whirling—*shigs se shig*,

Confer spiritual power to us *sādhakas*!

In the indestructible innermost sphere (*ti la ka*) of the five lights at the center of our hearts,

The light of primordial knowing of the mind, the great bliss that illuminates everything.

Is the empowerment of the supreme clairvoyance (*mngon par shes pa*) of the undifferentiated (*dbyer med*).
Since the entire mandala of the wer ma sNang srid kun gsal (‘the one who completely illuminates all that appears and exists’),

The sphere of the channels, winds, and seminal essences according to the inner way,

Are of a single essence (ro gcig) within the awakening mind that is the secret,

As [you] happily remain as the great bliss that is beyond union and separation,

Please open the gate of the magic of sNang srid kun gsal (‘the one who completely illuminates all that appears and exists’)! 

Bestow the excellent sight that clearly perceives the three times!

Reveal the vision that infallibly cognizes that which is produced in dependence!

Bestow the accomplishment of the mirror divination, the illuminating foresight!

samaya rgya. May it be virtuous!
4 The main semantic fields specific to Gesar rituals

4.1 Indexed glossary of technical terms in the translated texts.

The number after the letter T. refers to the catalog number (see the catalog of primary literature in chapter 2.2), whereas the number after the semicolon refers to the line of the text as edited in the present study, except for the SDG where the number refers to the line number of our edition of this text.

[Abbreviations: C., Colophon; SDG, bSam pa’i don grub ma; T., Text.]

\textit{ki (ki)} — Seed-syllable or war cry of Gesar. Often found in the war cry \textit{ki ki bswo bswo} — SDG 30.31; T.43: 11; T.85: 42.


\textit{rKyang (bu kha dkar or rgod)} — Gesar’s horse. rKyang bu kha dkar, has a very special status in the epic: he is the omniscient lord of the ‘do horses (see Helffer 1977: 145ff., 411ff. and Tsering 1979: 177 for the differences between ‘do horses and other breeds). He is the son of gods just like Gesar. According to Stein 1959: 535ff. and Tsering 1979: 178ff., rKyang bu kha dkar is a manifestation of the tantric deity Hayagrīva—SDG 76; T.45: 91; T.85: 41,385,434.

\textit{sku chas} — belongings, equipment, gear [of the dgra lha]. This includes the armor and weapons of dgra lhas, such as the helmet, the armor, shields, lance and banner, sword, bow and arrows, steeds, etc. (see Török 2009: 57–58)—T.47: 15; T.85: 46,435.
sku lha or sku bla—Personal god. This deity is responsible for the good health of the king and protects his body (see Sørensen/Hazod 2005: 277). It is probably originally the bla of the king that is embodied in a mountain (see Karmay 2003: 69)—T.44: 10; T.45: 61.

mkha’ dbyings—Vast expanse—T.12: 3.


ger mdzo—Gesar’s father. The spelling of this name varies considerably as noted by Stein 1959: 184. The first syllable of this name, ger, is also written ge in the epic which is a Zhangzhung word for demon (see Martin 2010: 59). Ger mdzo is a gnyan, a mountain deity that is a pho lha and a sku lha (see Stein 1959: 184)—T.45: 61 (gnyen chen sku lha); T.85: 389 (pha yab gnyan po).


god sri—The evil spirit of misfortune. The sri are spirits responsible for various problems, diseases, and recurrent or sequential deaths in the household (see Sihlé 2002 and Norbu 1997: 168–170)—T.12: 18.


gyod sri—The evil spirit of quarrel. The sri are spirits responsible for various problems, diseases, and recurrent or sequential deaths in the household (see Sihlé 2002 and Norbu 1997: 168–170)—T.12: 18.

dgyes sde—The [four] dGyes sde are mamos (thugs kyi dgyes sde mo), ‘the one that brings delight to the mind’ (see Blondeau 2002: 301)—T.45: 72; T.85: 382.

dgra bla dgu khri dgu 'bum—Nine hundred ninety thousand dgra blas—T.45: 76 passim.
sgra bla mched gsum lcam dral—Three brothers dgra blas, brothers and sisters. This expression refers to lcam srid Tha le 'od phram (Gesar’s sister), nu bo Klu sbrul 'od chen or nu bo klu sbrul 'od chung (Gesar’s younger brother), and phu bo Dung khyung dkar po, Gesar’s elder brother (see Hummel 1974)—T.85: 401.

mgron yag dar ma bcu gsum—Thirteen [cang sengs] that are ‘experts in covering long distances’. They were probably messengers or riders of the imperial postal service (see Norbu 1997: 56)—T.45: 68; T.85: 398.

rgyal srid sla bdun—The seven royal treasures of a universal monarch—They are the precious wheel (’khor lo rin po che), the precious jewel (nor bu rin po che), the precious queen (btsun mo rin po che), the precious minister (blon po rin po che), the precious elephant (glang po rin po che), the precious horse (rta mchog rin po che), the precious general (dmag dpon rin po che)—SDG 20; T.50: 19 (saptaratna).40.

dngos bsam—The [offering] substances that have been prepared—SDG 18, T.85: 415.

sngags drug dang phyag rgya drug—The six mantras and six mudras (see Beyer 1988: 346–351 for a detailed explanation)—SDG 5.

cong sa or cang se(n)gs—Deities of war who might correspond to the messengers of the Tibetan empire (see also Norbu 1997: 56)—T.85: 50.

cong se lam lha gnyan po—Eight powerful deities of the road (lam lha gnyan po [mched brgyad]) of the cang sengs (see Norbu 1997: 56)—T.85: 407.

lcam srid Tha le ’od phram (or in the epic, Tha le ’od dkar)—Gesar’s sister—T.45: 66; T.85: 395.

**gnyan**—The gnyans are the spirits ruling the intermediate space between the *lhas* and *klus* (see Karmay 1998: 441). “Au niveau populaire, les *lha* sont présentés dans plusieurs triples schémas aussi vagues soient-ils : *lha* *klu* *gnyan* gsum, « les *lha*, les *klu* et les *gnyan* » répartis verticalement dans l’espace, les *lha* « en haut » (*sa steng*), les *gnyan* au « médiane » (*sa bla*), les *klu* « en bas ou souterrains » (*sa ‘og).*” (Karmay 2003: 69)—SDG 31; T.45: 67,77; T.50: 7; T.85: 362,390.

**gnyan stag dmar po**—Red gNyan stag, a *dgra lha* accompanying Gesar (see Nebesky 1998: 333)—T.45: 67.

**gnyug ma chen po**—Original condition—T.73: 4.

**thig le**—Vital essence, vast edgeless expanse—T.45: 9; T.50: 51,111; T.67: 30; T.73: 4; T.58: 5; T.60: 27.

**thug kar**—Powerful war deities. For a detailed explanation of their cult and powers, see Norbu 1997: 51ff.—T.85: 50.

**dra ma mched dgu**—Nine Dra ma brothers. “The drala ‘of Primordial Power’ are the ‘Nine Drama Brothers’ (*drwa ma mched dgu*), deities of the original lineages of existence that the shen Yeshen Wangdzog worshipped with offerings and exhorted to action” (Norbu 1997: 55)—T.85: 399.

**drag po**—Rudra—T.12: 7; T.85: 310.

**dregs pa**—Haughty spirits. This is a collective term including various demons and gods, sometimes also grouped according to the eightfold classification found in the case of *lha srin*, although the list differs from the latter (see Pommaret 2008)—T.50: 7,109; T.67: 10; T.85: 27,413,445.

**bdud rtsi**—ambrosia (*amṛta*), often used in apposition with *gserskyems* as an offering, the ‘drink of immortality’ (see Nebesky 1998: 344)—SDG 21; T. 45: 23;
bdud bzhi—The four demons. According to Norbu 1997: 271, n.31.: “The ‘four demons’ (bdud bzhi) represent the four hindrances to spiritual realization. They are the demon of the passions (nyon mongs pa’i bdud), the demon of the physical body (phung po’i bdud), the demon of the lord of death (’chi bdag gi bdud), and the demon of the son of the deities (lha’i bu’i bdud).” In fact phung po’i bdud should be translated as ‘the demon of the aggregates’ since phung po cannot be reduced to the physical body. See also Bethlenfalvy 2003: 36b.—SDG 92; T.85: 72.

mda’ dar—The ritual arrow used in long-life practices—T.50: 7; T.58: 38,66; T.60: 11.

‘dod yon rnam lnga—The five sorts of desirable objects which please the senses (‘dod yon rnam lnga/pañcakāmaguṇa). They are the mirror (me long/adarśa), the lute (pi vang [?]vina), the incense burner (spos snod/dhūpa), the fruit (shing tog/phala), (see Farkas & Szabó 2002: 148 which refers to the mchod pa snga lnga but does not list the fifth item, silk)—SDG 19.

[rDo rje] Zu le sman—One of the twelve bstan ma belonging to the sub-group of the sman mo chen mo, g.Yu yi dril bu, residing in Jo mo g.yu ri gnas mchog. Her secret name is rdo rje (dril bu) zugs legs ma or zu le sman, she is in some lists of the bstan mas known as rDo rje g.yu sgron ma (see Nebesky 1998: 183–190)—T.43: 32.

rdo rje legs pa—rDo rje legs pa, a local powerful Bon deity tamed by Padmasambhava who appointed him as a protector of Buddhadharma (see
Hummel 1993: 79–85 for parallels between rDo rje legs pa as a blacksmith and Gesar in the epic)—T.50: 7; T.85: 384.

(lha srin) sde brgyad—The eight classes of gods and demons. They are listed as lha, klu, lha min, mi’am ci, gnod sbyin, mkha’ lding, chos skyong and dri za according to gNubs chen sangs rgyas ye shes. There are, however, various classifications of these eight classes of beings, such as lha, bdud, bstan, rgyal po, gnod sbyin, ma mo, the’u rang, klu. For a detailed account of these, see Bethlenfalvy 2003: 29b, Blondeau 2008, Nebesky 1975, and Pommaret 2002. Some of these beings can be benevolent like the Greek daimôn—SDG 59; T.50: 7; T.67: 10; T.85: 26,313.

nam mkha’ mdzod—The Sky Treasury, usually mentioned in reference to mantra, mudra, or samādhī (see sngags drug dang phyag rgya drug)—T.43: 5; T.44: 4; T.45: 30.

nu bo klu sbrul ’od chen or nu bo klu sbrul ’od chung—(Gesar’s) younger brother Klu sbrul ’od chen/chung—T.45: 64; T.85: 391.

(ma) ne ne gnam sman dkar mo—(Gesar’s) aunt (or mother according to Nebesky 1998: 200), gNam sman dkar mo. She is a sman mo that resides in the sky—T.45: 65.

sna ’dren gsum brgya—The three hundred commanders—SDG 12.

snang srid ma mo—sNang srid Ma mos—For a detailed explanation of the rNying ma cosmological myths in relation to the Ma mos, see Blondeau 2002—T.85: 394.

**pad+ma thod phreng**—Padma thod phreng (‘Lotus skull-garland’, one of Guru Rinpoche’s names)—T.43: 7; T.50: 3,10,72.

**pad+mā kā ra**—Padmākāra, one of Guru Rinpoche’s names—T.43: 2; T.44:2; T.45: 3.

*b*la*—Spirit. Bellezza explains it thus: “Bla is the animating principle or force that permits one to be aware of oneself and the external environment. It emanates from both the *sems* and *yid*.”

**dpa’ thus** or **dpa’ thul** or **dpa’ brtul**—Knight. Helffer translates it into French as ‘brave’, *yang thul* as ‘très brave’ and *zhe thul* as ‘hyper-brave’ (see Helffer 1977: 532; cf. Stein 1956: 51 and Tsering 1979: 180ff. for the names of these knights)—T.45: 69.

**dpa’ bo sum cu**—Thirty knights. *dpa’ bo* means *dpa’ thur* or *dpa’ thus* in this case and refers to the thirty knights accompanying Gesar (cf. Karmay: 1998: 468 & 496). For their iconographic representations, see the *Thangkha* picturing Gesar and his thirty *dpa’ thul* or *dpa’ thur* at the beginning of Stein 1959—SDG 11,24.

**phu bo dung khyung dkar po**—(Gesar’s) elder brother, Dung khyung dkar po—T.45: 63

**phu nu**—Brotherhood (‘brother’ being used figuratively here). “The term *phu nu* occurs frequently in the episode of ‘Khrung gling—when giving accounts of the society—with the meaning of ‘kinsman’, but, as Gling expands, different tribes appear and become an integrated part of Gling society. The term *phu nu* then covers the new members of the alliance. It brings together both sides: filiation and alliance.” (Karmay 1998: 500). An absolute solidarity is expected to reign within

---

186 Bellezza 2008: 363.
the _phu nu_. Gesar’s thirty knights constitute the original _phu nu_. Regarding this term and its importance in the Gesar epics, see Karmay 1998: 472ff.—T.43: 39; T.26: 4; T.27 in C.; T.28 in C.

**phya dmu gtsug gsum dgra bla**—_dGra blas_ of the Phya, dMu, and gTsug that are primordial deities who have ‘arranged’ the world in ancient Tibetan myths of creation. From these three kinds of deities originated three lineages of human beings (see Stein 1985: 104–107)—T.45: 73.

**phywa**—Good fortune. Originally, _phywa_ referred to local deities representing ancestral Bon gods that created the world. However, the modern meaning of _phywa_ is connected with prosperity, power, and luck (see Helffer 1977: 534, Pommairet 1994: 660, and Norbu 1997: 63–65 who explains in details the difference between _phywa_ and _g.yang._)—SDG 102; T.44: 24; T.85: 207,225; T.58: 11.

**dbang po'i me tog**—The flower of the senses is a wrathful offering of the five human organs (heart, eyes, tongue, nose, ears) that are torn out and presented in a skull-cup (see Beer 2003: 216–217)—T.50: 33; T.85: 332.

**'byung po**—Malevolent spirits—T.50: 82,130.

**mi bu gdung drug dgra bla**—_dGra blas_ of the six original Tibetan clans—T.45: 74.

**ma sang spun dgu**—The nine _ma sang_ brothers. “In the red annals, Kunga Dorje reports the story that the first to rule the Tibetan people, after they were born from the union of the monkey Bodhisattva and the rock ogress, were the nine Masang Brothers. Sumpa K’enpo refers to this passage and glosses the nine brothers as Nöjin, Dù, Sinpo, Lu, Tsen, Lha, Mu, Dre, and Gongpo. These nine ‘unclean
ones’ were the native spirits as well as the first rulers of Tibet . . . Many attempts were made to classify the bewildering profusion of this native pantheon. The more or less official Buddhist scheme is a list of ‘eight classes of gods and ogres,’ which compares in many ways with the more archaic list of the nine Masang Brothers given above.” (Beyer 1988: 293–294. See also Stein 1972: 193)—T.50: 7.

**mig dmar chen po**—The chief of the nine *ma sang* brothers, the great warlord Mig dmar. In the cantos studied in Helffer 1977: 39,251,269, there are three occurrences of the formulaic phrase: ‘sgyu mkhas Kha che mig dmar’, ‘the great magician Red eye from Kashmir’—T.50: 7; T.85: 383.

**dmu zḥag**—garuḍa in Zhangzhung language (see Martin 2010: 174b)—T.85: 202.

**rma g.yang**—The capacity for an individual to experience good fortune, auspiciousness, and prosperity (see Bellezza 2005: 387 n.170)—T.85: 203.

**sman**—T.45: 72; T.50: 7; T.67: 9.

**sman btsun rdo rje g.yu sgron ma**—sMan btsun rdo rje g.yu sgron ma is one of and the chief-deity of the twelve *bstan mas*; she is a *sman mo* (see Nebesky 1998: 181–201)—T.50: 7.

**gtsang rigs dpal mgon bdun cu**—Seventy glorious protectors gTsang rigs, usually found as ‘the seventy-five protectors’. These deities include the deities of the ten directions, planetary deities, *mahādevas*, deities of the continents, etc. (see rGya mtsho 1991: 58)—T.45: 78.
**gtsug na rin chen**—King of the nāgas (klu rgyal) who is Gesar’s grandfather. gTseg na is a former Bon deity (see Cuevas 2003: 239 n.8, Karmay 1998: 489)—T.45: 62.

**rtsal**—Power (of *rig pa*)—T.43: 9; T.85: 45; T.47: 4; T.50: 3,110; T.67: 5; T.85: 326; T.85: 386; T.58: 7; T.59: 27,32 (see also *rtsal snang*, *rig rtsal*).

**rtsal snang**—The manifesting power [of sheer knowing (*rig pa*)]—T.12: 4; T.50: 49; T.60: 3,21.

**tshangs pa lha yi me tog**—Flower of the God Brahma, the name Tshangs pa lha yi me tog is an epithet of king Khri srong lde’u btsan—T.45: 84.

**tshe ring mched lnga**—Five sisters of longevity. The *tshe ring mched lnga* are important protectors in the rNying ma tradition (see Bethlenfalvy 2003: 32b, Nebesky 1998: 188–191, Schicklgruber 1992: 729—SDG 60.

**mtsho skyes (rdo rje)**—Lake-born vajra, one of Guru Rinpoche’s names—T.43: 47; T.45: 83; T.85: 17.

**rdzas brgyad**—The eight auspicious substances, *bkra shis rdzas brgyad*, which differs from *bkra shis rtags brgyad*. The *bkra shis rdzas brgyad* are the mirror (*me long*), bezoar (*gi wang*), curd (*zho*), wood-apple fruit (*shing tog bel ba*), *panicum dactylon* grass (*rtsa dur ba*), right-coiling conch shell (*dung dkar g.yas khyil*), vermilion powder (*li khri*), white mustard seed (*yungs dkar*) (see Farkas & Szabó 2002: 137)—SDG 19, T.50: 19 (*aśṭamaṅgalam dravyaṃ*).

wer ma sum brgya drug cu—Three hundred and sixty wer mas. The wer mas are powerful Bon war deities appearing to subjugate demons, obstacles, and hindrances (see Norbu 1997: 54–55)—T.45: 75 passim.

zhe thus khra glag spyang gsum—The three valiant ones (zhe thus), falcon, eagle, and wolf, are Gesar’s bodyguards (see Stein 1956: 51 and Tsering 1979: 162. Cf. dpa thul)—T.45: 71.

gzhi bdag—The spirits owning the land, a kind of genius loci. See Bethlenfalvy 2003: 40: “It is not easy to differentiate between the sadak and the sidak (gzhi dag), who are the guards of a narrower, more exactly circumscribed area, cliff, pass or marsh.”(see also Karmay 1998: 442ff..)—SDG 9,61,68; T.45: 79.


zang thal—all-pervasive and unimpeded—T.45: 26; T.60: 17.

zo dor—Local deities—T.45: 80.

e—War cry ‘e’—T.43: 33.

yang thus dam pa’i mi bdun—Seven beings that are the noble braves (see dpa thul)—T.45: 70.

yul lha—Local gods. “A yul is therefore quite similar to the now outdated connotation of the French word ‘pays’, meaning not the country but the region of origin. . . . One of the most important and well-known roles of the yul lha is the protection of his or her territory and its well-being and fertility. This includes not only human beings but also cattle and the whole landscape, and implies a strong notion of ownership.” (Pommaret 2004: 41–51; cf. Schicklgruber 1998)—SDG 9; T.45: 80.

**yon mchod**—Patrons and bla mas (see Ruegg 1991)—SDG 16,26,99, T.36 in C.

**g.yang**—Prosperity, in the sense of the principle or capacity to obtain that which is positive in terms of wealth, luck, etc.—SDG 76,101,102; T.43: 45; T44: 24; T.45: 118; T.50: 46,78; T.73: 3; T.85: 54,93,106,114,200,201,202,203, 207,209,239,243.

**rab 'byams**—Infinitely pervading—T.12: 4; T.50: 30; T.85: 145,227,367.


**rig rtsal**—The power of sheer knowing (rig pa)—T.12: 5; T.47: 26,31; T.50: 49.

**rig rtsal gar**—The dancing power of sheer knowing—T.12: 5.

**rol pa**—Play or playful manifestation [of sheer knowing (rig pa)]—T.50: 6,50; T.85: 16,325,365.

**sa bdag**—Lord of the earth. See Bethlenfalvy 2003: 40a:”The Sadak is the owner and lord of a place or an area of land”—SDG 61.

**srin (po)**—“The Srin po are cannibal demons corresponding to the Rākṣasa of the Indian tradition.” (Norbu 1997: 253, n.11)—SDG 59,87; T.50: 6,130; T.85: 36,307,308.


**gses skyems or skyems**—Golden drink, gser skyems, is built on the basis of a synecdoche. Norbu 1997: 250, n.46 explains the term in the following way: “Libation offerings (usually of chang and tea) are called gser skyems lit. ‘golden beverages’, possibly because of the ancient custom of serving drinks to an important person in a cup in which a piece of gold was mounted.” See also
Nebesky 1998: 401: “Most of the ceremonies performed in honour of the dharmapālas include also the offering of gser skyems or ‘gold beverage’. The gser skyems consists of Tibetan beer (chang) mixed with grain. . . . An oral tradition claims that the term ‘gold beverage’ has been derived from the habit of an ancient Tibetan king who, when drinking beer, always used to lay a few gold nuggets on the bottom of his cup. The ritual instructions for offering a gser skyems are as follows: ‘At a purified place offer the mountain of food for the gods, freshly-brewed bear (sic) (chang phud), the first-gathered fruit of the harvest (lo phud), various flowers, healing juices (rtsi sman), the three sweet things (mngar gsum), various kinds of meat, different medicines, various sorts of corn, silks, and different kinds of food.’ A special kind of gser skyems offered in ceremonies of black magic is the ‘blood gser skyems’ (khrag gi gser skyems). It consists of a mixture of the blood of a hen, sheep, or yak with grain”. For example of such rituals, cf. Nebesky 1998: 211, 376, 378, 463, 473, 485 and Norbu 1997: 176—SDG 4,21; T.43:3,24; T.44:3; T.45:3,23; T.58: 36; T.85: 6,11,288,337,377, 420,442.

gsur—Burnt offerings—T.43: 3; T.50: 34; T.85: 331.

bsangs rdzas—Substances for the purification by means of smoke—According to Norbu 1997: 109,110,250, n.37: “The five aromatic plants (bdud rtsi can gyi shing lnga) used in the bsang fumigation rites are shug pa (sabina tibetica, a type of cypress), sur kar (ledum palustre, a type of rhododendron), stag pa (birch), spen dkar (potentilla leucophylla) and nya sbrid (a mountain shrub).” Juniper is also used for bsang, along with various other aromatic plants, cf. Karmay 1998: 380ff.—SDG 4.
swo or bswoswo—Cry to invoke Gesar. Often found in conjunction with ki as in Gesar’s war cry ki ki bswoswo—SDG 30; T.43: 11; T.85: 42; T.85: 428.

he—Sound of Gesar’s laughter—T.43: 39,41.

he ru ka—Heruka—T.12: 8; T.85: 2;

rlung rta—Luck, auspiciousness, good fortune (see Karmay 1993a). Norbu 1997: 69 elucidates this term in the following way: “... It [rlung rta or klung rta] seems to refer to the transmutation of every thing that depends on five elements from negative to positive, from good to bad, from misfortune to good fortune, from baleful portents to auspicious signs, from poverty to prosperity, and it implies that this should ensue with the greatest speed.” See also Karmay 1993a, for iconographic aspects of the Gesar rlung rta flags. The orthography of this term vary: rlung rta, klung rta, and slung rta.

lha chen tshangs pa dkar po—Sita Brahmā, Gesar’s celestial father. This god was the personal deity of Srong bstan sgam po. As a sku lha, he was responsible for the health of the king’s body and bore the sound-stone (bla rdo) of the king (see Sørensen/Hazod 2005: 277–278)—T.45: 60.

lhun grub—spontaneous presence, or spontaneously present—SDG 111; T.43: 47; T.45: 9,120; T.50: 52; T.85: 98.

a ne dgung sman rgyal mo—Gesar’s Aunt [gNam] dgung sman rGyal mo—T.85: 393.

o rgyan—Land of Oḍḍiyāna (probably the valley of Swat in northwestern Kashmir)—T.43: 3,42; T.47: 7; T.50: 7.
4.2 Categorising technical vocabulary into semantic fields

Although semantic fields should not be distinguished in opposition to each other, categorizing the technical vocabulary mentioned above into main groups leads us to identify the following significant areas of research specific to the Gesar practices:

- Gesar’s names, symbolic characteristics, and retinue, e.g. *sman btsun rdo rje g.yu sgron ma, rdo rje legs pa*
  
- ritual ‘mechanics’:
  
  o offerings of the ritual, e.g. *dbang po’i me tog*
  
  o binding oaths and pledges, e.g. *dam bsre*
  
- magic and transformation, such as:
  
  o increasing life-force, luck, vitality, prosperity, e.g. *g.yang, phwya*
  
  o invoking and controlling gods and demons, e.g. *srin po, ma mo, klu*
  
- Tibetan empire
  
  o references to royal symbols and historical figures, e.g. Srong btsan sgam po, Khri srong lde btsan
  
  o feudal ‘oath culture’, e.g. *gsar skyems*
  
- rDzogs chen, e.g. *rig pa, rig rtsal, rol pa, zang thal*
  
- Pre-Buddhist culture, e.g. *wer ma*
5 From the Gesar epic to the cult of Gesar

5.1 An historical and philological overview

5.1.1 The epic and its different versions

A complete original recension of all the chapters constituting what has been called ‘the epic’ remains unknown, if it ever existed.\(^{187}\) As suggested by Chatterji 1981: xvi—xvii, the corpus gesaricus can be divided into four main groups:

(1) Songs, e.g. Helffer 1977 & 1982;\(^{188}\)

(2) Short stories composed in prose and verse, e.g. Francke 1902. “An average episode in manuscript contains 5000 to 10,000 lines of verse (50 to 100 songs) linked by a spoken narration” (Samuel 1996: 359);

(3) Long narrative works in prose and verse recited over extended periods of time (several days or weeks), e.g. David-Néel and Lama Yongden’s account of the epic;

(4) Vast works similar to the Indian Purāṇas, e.g. Epic 1979–1984 in 31 volumes.

These Gesar oral and written narratives at the basis of the epic have circulated throughout Central and East Asia; they have been found in China,\(^{189}\) Russia, Nepal, Bhutan, India, Pakistan, and Mongolia. The stories are told or written in various languages: Tibetan, Mongolian, Monguor, Turkic, Kalmuck,


\(^{188}\) More than 120 cantos have been recorded by Gesar researchers in China (Unesco 2009).

\(^{189}\) Among the following ethnic groups: Tibetan, Mongolian, Han, Monguor, Yugur, Monba, Lhoba, Nahki, Purmi, Bai.
Buriat, Khalsa, Tuvian, Chinese, Balti, Burshaski and Lepcha.\textsuperscript{190} The earliest manuscript goes back to the 14th century, whilst the earliest xylograph is a Mongolian version of the epic published in Beijing in 1716 (translated into German by Schmidt in 1839). More than 80 melodies are used to sing the epic, and beyond the vast corpus of literature, the oral tradition of the epic has been preserved throughout the centuries as Gesar chronicles are still sung today by bards. Indeed, the Gesar epic presents the unique feature of being a work still in progress as new chapters are added to earlier ones.\textsuperscript{191} Moreover, the scope of the epic remains a matter of ongoing research, as additional chapters are identified by academics, e.g. \textit{The Chinese Land of Gesar} found in Yunnan (Bäcker 1986).

Since the enormous task of listing all available sources of the epic would be in itself a research project, the following short list of the main versions of the epic (including oral/written materials) indicates something of the vastness of the epic.\textsuperscript{192}

- Amdo (Hermanns 1965 & Stein 1990)
- Eastern Buriat (Hangalov 1969)
- Western Buriat (Imogenov 1995)
- Khams (Stein 1956)
- Ladhakh (Francke 1900 & 1902, Hermanns 1991, Gosh 1997)
- Mongolia (Schmidt 1925, originally published in 1839, Heissig)
- the Monguor ethnic group (Schröder 1980).

\textsuperscript{190} See Stein 1979: 1.
\textsuperscript{191} See \textit{Kha Gling} and \textit{dMyul Gling} in NorbuJ 1971 for examples of chapters added in the 18th or 19th centuries, or even more recently, \textquoteleft Jar gling g.yul 'gyed, \textquoteright an episode of Gesar set in Phiyigling 'Jar, probably Hitler’s Germany’\textquoteright—Karmay 1993b: 245–246, written by the eighth Khams sprul.
\textsuperscript{192} As noted by Stein, \textquoteleft Il fallait bien se limiter cette fois sous peine de fatiguer le lecteur par une quantité énorme de matériaux’ (Stein 1959: VII—VIII).
Regarding the main sources of the epic, Stein provides a list of available xylographs and manuscripts that should be augmented with the ‘discoveries’ of previously unknown chapters during the past forty years.\textsuperscript{193} Needless to say, this task lies beyond the scope of the present study.

The structure of the epic is based on the following storyline as summarized by Geoffrey Samuel with regards to the Eastern Tibetan version. The context is that of a troubled time, as social cohesion desintegrates and external threats become so acute that the very survival of the country is at risk:

1. \textit{Lha gling} ("The Gods and Gling"). The people of the land of Gling . . . appeal to the gods for help against the demons who are troubling their land. The gods agree to send one of their number to be born on earth to rescue Gling from the four great demon kings (of the North Country, Hor, Mon and 'Jang). Padmasambhava visits the underwater land of the nāgas to obtain a nāga princess who will be Gesar's mother.\textsuperscript{194}

2. \textit{'Khrungs gling} ("The Birth"). Gesar is born on earth as the son of the nāga princess and Seng blon, a chief of the tribes of Gling. His wicked uncle, Khro thung, attempts to kill him, but is unsuccessful.

3. \textit{rTa rgyugs} ("The Horse-Race"). Gesar tricks his wicked uncle Khro thung into arranging a horse-race, the winner to become ruler of

\textsuperscript{194} Gesar has two families: the first one is celestial since he is a god from ‘above’ (\textit{lha}) at the beginning of the epic; the second one is terrestrial as he is born on earth as a god from the intermediary space (\textit{gnyan}) whose father is a mountain-god and mother a nāga following Padmasambhava’s request.
Gling and husband to 'Brug mo, daughter of the chief of sKya lo. Gesar wins the race, ascends the throne and marries 'Brug mo.

(10) bDud 'dul ("Defeating the Demon-King of the North"). Another wife of Gesar's, Me bza 'Bum skyid, is abducted by Klu btsan, the demon king of the North and the first of Gesar's four great enemies. With the aid of Me bza' and of Klu btsarin's sister, the female warrior A stag lha mo, Gesar kills Klu btsan, and the people of the demon-realm become converts to Buddhism and allies of Gling. However, Me bza' drugs Gesar so that he forgets his mission, and he remains with her in the demon-realm of the North.

(11) Hor gling g.yul 'gyed ("The War of Hor and Gling"). Meanwhile the three demon-kings of Hor, led by Gur dkar, overcome Gling and abduct 'Brug mo, who becomes the mother of Gur dkar's child. Gesar is eventually aroused from his drugged state, returns to Gling and leads a successful campaign to defeat Hor, which becomes an ally of Gling.

(13, 14) 'Jang gling g.yul 'gyed ("The War of 'Jang and Gling"); Mon gling g.yul 'gyed ("The War of Mon and Gling"). These are the two further demon-king episodes, in which King Sa tham of the 'Jang (a people identified with the Naxi of present-day Yunnan) and King Shing khri of Mon are defeated, and their peoples become allies of Gling.
(18) Nag po rgya gling kyi le'u ("The China Episode"). Gesar goes on a (peaceful) visit to China, where he wins the hand of a Chinese princess through his wisdom and magical ability.

(106) dMyal gling ("Hell and Gling"). Gesar goes to the underworld to rescue his mother . . . After Gesar's return, he declares his mission at an end and departs to the realm of the gods.195

From a purely historical perspective, a few questions about the origin of the epic have fascinated Tibetologists for decades:

Was there a person called Gling Gesar? Where is Gling? What is the particular time of origin of the hero story? Who is the author?196

As we have seen, no author or Ur-text could be identified, and the very question of whether there ever was an identifiable author at the inception of the epic remains open. It is, however, possible to identify an ‘original’ core of the epic by analyzing the episodes across the various versions available. According to Samuel, Lha gling, 'Khrung gling, rTa rgyugs, bDud 'dul, Hor gling, and China episodes are found in most versions. This proto-epic dates back at least to the latter part of the 16th century, and could be possibly considerably older.197 As evidenced by the geographical and cultural elements found in the text, the epic would have been composed in North-Eastern Tibet. No mention of the epic could, however, be found before 1500. Around that time, a cycle of legends entitled rLangs Po ti bse ru was written to exalt the rLangs dynasty and the king of Tibet.
Byang chub rgyal mtshan of Phag mo gru (1302–1364). Some parts of the *rLangs po ti bse ru* could be even older (ca.1400) and the main heroes’ names as well as major elements of the Gesar epic are mentioned in this work. Moreover, the name Gesar is also found in *gter mas* of the 14th century (1347), *bKa’ thang sde lnga*, *rGyal po bka’ thang*, and *Blon po bka’ thang*.

From the perspective of its main stylistic and narrative elements, a *terminus post quem* for the epic in its prosimetric form would be the late period of the Empire (ca. 800–850 CE). Indeed, the earliest prosimetric chronicles in the Tibetan literature date back to this period (e.g. the biographies of Tibetan kings, see Yang 2001: 299–301). If Gesar’s conquests of foreign lands echo those of the Tibetan Empire, the logical *terminus a quo* would be around the 9th century at the earliest. As for the name Gesar, ‘Gesar of Phrom’ appears in the *gter mas* mentioned above and Stein shows that this name or title corresponding to the Greek Kaisar for the Roman Caesar could have found its way to Eastern Tibet through several countries such as Khotan where the proper noun Kheysara had been in use as early as the 8th century. The name or title Gesar could therefore have been theoretically in use in East Tibet during the 11th century.

On the basis of the *rLangs po ti bse ru*, scholars such as Kaschewsky, Tsering, and Damdinsüren have suggested that the historical Gesar could be dated to the 10th-11th century.

In terms of the name of Gesar’s country, Gling as a principality in North-Eastern Tibet already existed at the end of the Yuan Dynasty (13th century) whereas the toponym ‘Gling’ in Amdo has been used since the 8th century.

---

201 See Stein 1959: 197–236.
5.1.2 From the epic to *bsangs mchod* rituals

There is a mention of Khrom Gesar in a Bon ritual to attract *g.yang*.\(^{202}\) This text is ascribed to the Bon master Bru ston born in 1242. The deities invoked in this ritual belong to the archaic pantheon of Bon deities. According to the Bon tradition, this ritual would date back to the pre-imperial period. It is worth noting that its style and its structure are quite similar to some of the Gesar rituals composed seven hundred years later. This can be easily explained by the common use of formulaic phrases that have been repeated or borrowed across the centuries. Even poetic formulations typical of the Gesar epic and rituals, such as verbal onomatopoeic reduplications and trisyllabic echoic words, are also found in different stanzas of this ritual, e.g. *lhangs se lhang, ldems se ldems, mer re re, si li li, tse re re, di ri ri, kyi li li*.\(^{203}\)

Apart from this (possibly) early trace of Gesar in a Bon ritual, the earliest practice texts related to Gesar are *gsol mchod* ‘prayers’/‘supplications’ and *bsangs mchod* ‘offering of purification by means of smoke’. We can trace back the development of these ritualized practices to the epic, which is, as noted by Stein, of a religious character.\(^{204}\) The recitation of the narrative by a bard (*sgrung pa*) must be done at special times, such as winter, and is expected to have positive effects in terms of success regarding war or hunting, as it provokes the descent (*’bab pa*) of the *dgra bla*, Gesar. In some ethnic groups of Central Asia and Tibet,

\(^{202}\) See Bellezza 2005: 456–462, the verse “The hero *g.yang* of the Khrom ge-sar king” is found p.462.

\(^{203}\) More research across the Bon vast corpus of rituals would be necessary to assess the authenticity of this verse.

bards are considered to be shamans inspired by and directly connected with the deities of the epic. 205 The descent of the god gives to the bard the character of a medium who, in trance, becomes the support for the deity (sku rten pa). The prayers (gsol mchod) are part and parcel of the recitation which is constituted of five independent parts: prelude, prayers, introduction, main body, conclusion.206 Prayers made by participants during the recitation, just like the offerings of smoke, mirror Gesar’s practices in the epic, in which he himself propitiates his protectors and repeatedly offers them bsangs. Such prayers probably date back to the origin of the epic itself, since Gesar was considered to be a divine being from the beginning. The bsangs to Gesar were probably performed as early as the prayers. Heissig and Stein confirms the fact that bsangs rituals were already performed around 1600. At that time, Gesar had already been accepted as a protector of the Manchu Dynasty.207 The earliest Gesar bsangs are in fact birch bark manuscripts found in the ruins of Harbuhyn by H. Perlee and E.W. Sawchunow in 1970. These manuscripts were dated back to a period covering the second part of the 16th century up to 1639. Another manuscript, Blama erdeni geser uqayulqu erdeni-yin suryal (1614), was examined by Heissig who concluded that Gesar was already considered as a deity protecting from diseases

205 Horwitz 1993: 40 defines a shaman in the following way: “A shaman is someone who changes his or her state of consciousness at will, in order to journey to another reality, a ‘non-ordinary reality’, the world of the spirits. There she meets with her spirit helpers to ask for help, power, or knowledge for herself and/or others. Mission accomplished, the shaman journeys back to ordinary reality where she uses or dispenses the newly gained knowledge and/or power.” In the Tibetan context (see Samuel 2005: 116ff.), although the shamanic level of the practice is also based on the help of spirits, or demons (in the sense of daémon), the realities (ordinary and non-ordinary) are not as strictly separated as in Horwitz’s definition. As an aside note, it is worth mentioning that Bon cannot be conflated with shamanic practices, although shamanic elements are also present in Bon. One has to be cautious in this respect to avoid any gross generalizations and oversimplifications often implied by the use of the term ‘shamanism’ (see Bjerken 2004).


207 See Stein 1979: 11.
The full emergence of Gesar as a protector in the 18th century seems to result from the Manchu policy of merging ‘lamaist’ and Chinese religious ideas. Gesar became, at that time, identified with Kuan ti, the Chinese Taoist god of war, the Mongolian great Khan, Dayisun tngri. As a consequence of this, Kuan ti oracle and Geser Khan merged and Gesar divination practices found their way into Tibet, probably through the Chinese traders living there. According to Samuel, most Gesar temples in Tibet were associated with the Manchu cult of this god of war.

5.1.3 The ris med movement and the inception of Gesar practices

The list of the authors who have composed at least one work related to Gesar is like a “Who’s Who” of the Khams 19th century ris med movement: ’Jam mgon Kong sprul, ’Jam dbyangs mkhyen brtse’i dbang po, mDo mkhyen brtse, mChog ’gyur gling pa, Nyag bla padma bdud ’dul, ’Ju Mi pham rgya mtsho, and gTer ston bSod rgyal, among others. The homogeneity of this group is striking: all of them were rDzogs chen adepts and knowledgeable in the Gesar epic, which

---

208 Regarding the Mongolian Gesar bsangs rituals, see Rintchen 1958, Tucci/Heissig 1970, Heissig 1978 & 2002. Unfortunately, I have not yet read Rintchen’s articles at the time of writing and have therefore solely relied on Heissig’s documents.

209 See Tucci/Heissig 1970: 408–410. There were, for example, some Gesar/Kuan ti temples in Tibet in 1748 (see Stein 1959: 137).

210 See Samuel 2005: 181. Tsering mentions that Gesar temples were frequent in China. As was done for other protectors, arms were offered to Gesar in Tibetan temples and Mipham’s texts would be found there as well (see Tsering 1979: 168–169). Stein asserts that there were Kuan ti temples in every place where Chinese had settled (see Stein 1959: 114).

211 I have not included Lha rigs ye shes rol pa rtsal in this list as I do not have enough biographical information about him at the time of writing this thesis.
is apparent throughout their Gesar practice texts;\(^{212}\) all of them were sympathetic to Bon;\(^{213}\) all of them were from Eastern (Khams) or North-Eastern Tibet (mGo log);\(^{214}\) all of them lived during the 19th century.\(^{215}\) Moreover, 'Jam dbyangs mkhyen brtse'i dbang po and 'Ju Mipham, probably the most influential persons in the inception of the Gesar cult, were connected to Gesar’s clan (i.e. sMug po) through their maternal lineage. If we try to date the catalogued rituals on the basis of their colophons, we obtain the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Text #(^{216})</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Three possible dates:</td>
<td>Lha rigs bde chen ye shes rol pa rtsal</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{212}\) In fact, most Eastern recensions of the epic bear the marks of the rDzogs chen teachings as some of them have been edited by lamas of the lineage, or even discovered as _ger mas_, e.g., Rig ’dzin drag rtsal rdo rje’s re-discovery in mGo log of Chos kyi dbang phyug’s _dMyal gling_ narrating Gesar’s journey to Yama’s hells (see Kapstein 2007: 359–362 & NorbuJ 1971). Stein notes that the lamas supervising the edition of the _gLing tshang_ xylographs were 'Jam dbyangs mkhyen brtse'i dbang po, mChog 'gyur gling pa, 'Ju Mi pham rgya mtsho, A ’dzom ‘brug pa, and gTer ston bSod rgyal (see Stein 1979: 13). For a detailed account of the editing process in which mKhyen brtse'i dbang po and Mipham were involved, see Stein 1956: 8–14. In addition, according to Stein, the fifth Dalai-Lama, a rDzogs chen practitioner in his own right, knew the epic quite well (see Stein 1959: 519).

\(^{213}\) This appears clearly in our translations of 'Jam mgon Kong sprul and 'Ju Mi pham’s works (see for example expressions like _phywa gshen_ in T.58: 11; _g.yung drung_ in T.58: 4; ‘support of Buddhists and Bon pos’ as a vocative for Gesar in T.85: 32). It seems that the relations between Bon and Buddhist monasteries in Khams were generally good, even in the case of a former Bon monastery such as rDzong gsar with Ris spun (see TseringT 2002). The openness of the _ris med_ movement to pre-Buddhist influences helps us better understand the essentially syncretic nature of what has come to be widely termed ‘Tibetan Buddhism’. For an account of the controversy related to the inclusion of Bon texts in the Rin chen gter mdzod, see Blondeau 1988.

\(^{214}\) The cult of Gesar is extremely popular in mGo log. The reason for this could have been the Manchu syncretic merging of Gesar with Kuan ti that resulted in stressing the warrior character of Gesar. Many lamas of the _ris med_ movement were from mGo log or spent some time there. The first rDo grub chen was from mGo log like his main disciple mDo mkhyen brtse (see Thondup 1999: 137,179). He spent six years in Amdo teaching Tibetans and Mongols (see Thondup 1999: 155). mDo mkhyen brtse, on his part, spent several years in mGo log after he left his monastery to become a layman. He also travelled across Tibet, China, and Mongolia for three years (see Barron 2005: 398). As for Mipham, he spent some months in mGo log when he was about seventeen years old on account of the troubles in Nyag rong (see Dorje/Kapstein 1991: 869).

\(^{215}\) Samuel mentions a text about Gesar as a _nor lha_ ‘wealth god’, called _sTag gzig nor ‘gyed_, possibly written in the 17th century by Padma rig ’dzin that I have not found at the time of writing (see Samuel 1992: 718). For detailed biographies of the _ris med_ masters, see Dorje/Kapstein 1991, Thondup 1999, and Barron 2005.

\(^{216}\) The number refers to the text as listed in the catalog of primary literature above (see chapter 2.2).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year(s)</th>
<th>Person/Event Description</th>
<th>Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1808/09, 1868/69</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1827/28</td>
<td>rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje (1800-1859?)</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1827/28</td>
<td>Khams sprul lnga pa (1781-1847)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1844-45</td>
<td>Khams sprul lnga pa (1781-1847)</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1853/54</td>
<td>rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje (1800-1859?)</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1853/54</td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa (1829-1870)</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1853/54</td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa (1829-1870)</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1853/54</td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa (1829-1870)</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1859/60</td>
<td>rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje (1800-1859?)</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1859</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1865</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1867/68</td>
<td>rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje (1800-1859?)</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1867/68</td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa (1829-1870)</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1867/68</td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa (1829-1870)</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1867/68</td>
<td>mChog gyur gling pa (1829-1870)</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1870</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1873</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1873</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1874</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1875</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1875</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1875</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

217 The years 1839/40 & 1852/53 are also possible according to the colophon but Tulku Thondup mentions that “In 1825, accompanied by his sister and others, he went to Ma Valley and discovered the treasures of Ling.” (Thondup 1999: 192).
A cursory examination of the catalog of early Gesar texts before Mipham reveals that most of these works are *bsangs mchod* and *gsol mchod* such as those of Khams sprul lnga pa sgrub brgyud nyi ma (see T.5–7), which is to be expected since the cult of Gesar originates in the epic where these practices are performed by Gesar himself. A new kind of text, however, appears in this list: *sādhanas* of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1876</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1876</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1877</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>77</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1877-80</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>82</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1884</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>59</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1884</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1885</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>76</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1887</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1887</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1887</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1895</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>84</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1896</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>69</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1896</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>71</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1896</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>79</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1896</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>87</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1902</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>53</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1905</td>
<td>Mi pham rnam rgyal (1846-1912)</td>
<td>61</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Gesar as a yidam, or Gesar empowerment rituals. Among the former, we find texts like Lha rigs bde chen ye shes rol pa rtsal’s Gesar rdo rje tshe'i rgyal po'i gzhung dang man ngag gi skor bdud rtsi’ bum bzang (T.1), rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje’s dNgos grub rol mtsho (T.8), Gesar skyes bu'i sgrub thabs yid bzhin dbang rgyal (T.14), or mChog gyur gling pa’s Gesar skyes bu don 'grub kyi sgrub thabs grub gnyis dpyid ster las bzhi lhun grub (T.23). An example of the latter is mChog gyur gling pa’s Dag snang Gesar skyes bu don 'grub kyi dbang chog phrin las kun khyab (T.24).

Not only do these works represent textual innovations compared to the traditional Gesar bsangs, but they also herald a major shift in the cult of Gesar. Indeed, from their point of view, the epic hero is no longer merely a protector that one propitiates with offerings but also a yidam in his own right whose sādhana one can practice to attain awakening. If one further examines works of this period, one cannot help noticing that most of them are either gter mas ‘treasure texts’ (e.g. Lha rigs bde chen ye shes rol pa rtsal’s T.1, or rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje’s T.8, T.9, T.16, T.17) or dag snang ‘pure vision’ (e.g. mChog gyur gling pa’s T.23, T.24218). Some of rDo mkhyen brtse ye shes rdo rje’s works such as T.8, T.9, T.16, and T.17 are even called (dus mtha’i) gter smyon ‘crazy treasure texts (of the end of time)’. The fact that some Gesar rituals appeared as gter mas ‘discovered’ by gter stons seems to be the logical consequence of the typically Tibetan tantric or cultural phenomena such as the lha palda’ bo ‘spirit-medium’ or ’bab sgrung ‘inspired Gesar singer’, all of which are associated with the epic.219 In a Mongolian text examined by Heissig, Blama erdeni geser uqayulqu

218 See Doctor 2005: 97.
erdeni-yin suryal, Gesar meets the Dalai Lama, just like he meets Lha rigs ye shes rol pa rtsal, the gter ston face to face.²²⁰

Expressed in a colloquial way, it appears that, with Mipham, Gesar rituals ‘go turbo’. A quick look at Mipham’s works related to Gesar shows that they include a vast array of different texts pertaining to both mundane and ultimate goals: gsol mchod/gsol 'debs (supplication and/or offerings), bsangs mchod (smoke offering), sādhanas, guru yogas, bskang gsol (ritual of fulfillment of pledges and supplications), lcag sgrub (!),²²¹ g.yang sgrub (ritual accomplishing g.yang), pra chog (ritual of divination), rlung rta (ritual to raise rlung rta), dgra 'dul (ritual to subjugate the enemy), nor sgrub (ritual to accomplish wealth), phud mchod (offering of phud), snying thig (heart-essence practice text), man ngag (pith instruction), dbang sdud (ritual to magnetize), yo bcos (ritual to restore harmony), srog gtad (ritual of life force transmission). According to Stein, Mipham also composed the libretto of the ceremonial dance (‘cham) of Gesar that was performed every year in rDzogs chen monastery on the eleventh moon.²²²

The vastness of Mipham’s Gesar cycle has led Phuntsho to make the following remark:

Mipham seems to have regarded Gesar to have lived as a quasi-human figure and believed that Gesar and his entourage are now divine spirits who are guardians of Buddha’s teachings (dharmapāla, chos skyong). Mipham not only adopted Gesar as his private protector (srung ma), or dgra lha as he usually referred to him, but also introduced the practice

²²¹ Ritual for the fabrication of a magical whip that grants all wishes.
of worshipping Gesar as a guru and chosen deity (istiadvatā, yidam).

Many of his followers today continue the tradition of worshipping Gesar as a dgra lha, who protects them from obstruction on their path to Buddhahood.223

As we have seen, Mipham did not in fact introduce the practice of Gesar as a yidam as assumed by Phuntsho, however, it seems correct to state that he definitely established the practice of Gesar as a fully-fledged system, appearing to be almost self-sufficient, particularly on account of his reliance upon the firm ground represented by the immense corpus of rDzogs chen teachings. Just like he did with the pre-Buddhist gto magic rituals of Bon and Chinese origin, Mipham seems to have had the intention of establishing within Buddhism—as it was practised in his own spiritual tradition—a great number of Gesar practices that were probably in use in North-Eastern Tibet.224

Two questions about Mipham’s enterprise arise at this stage: (1) Are there specific reasons why Mipham embarked on this project apart from his devotion for Gesar? (2) How did Mipham reconcile the cult of Gesar as an emanation of Avalokiteśvara with other important aspects of his own spiritual path, such as the practice of his yidam Mañjuśrī?

223 Phuntsho 2007: 196. An anecdote told by Stein shows that, according to the tradition, Mipham had a very special connection with Gesar. As Mipham was practicing before thangkas and representations of Gesar, they became animated and some of Gesar’s warriors stepped out of the pictures to walk around. As they eventually stepped back into the images, it was clear that something had indeed happened since their weapons, on the thangkas, were not where they were before the incident (see Stein 1959: 336).

224 In Lin’s study about Mipham’s gto rituals, it appears clearly that formulaic phrases are used to anchor non-Buddhist practices to Buddhadharma (see Lin 2005a and also Cuevas 2010 for a detailed account of Mipham’s Las sna tshogs pa’i sngags kyi be’u ’bum).
In an introduction to his translation of the Gesar epic, Stein studies the colophons of the chapters in the edition supervised by Mipham. This fascinating account shows the nature of the editing process of the epic in connection with religious practice or, better formulated, as religious practice. Having had the occasion to work previously on Mipham’s formulation of the two realities in the context of Madhyamaka, and knowing the prominent role played by ‘Jam dbyangs mkhyen brtse’i dbang po in Mipham’s philosophy as he directly asked Mipham to write commentaries for their tradition and lineage, I could not help being astonished by Stein’s explanation that ‘Jam dbyangs mkhyen brtse’i dbang po was at the origin of this editing work of the Gesar epic as he exhorted the king of Derge, ‘Chi med grupa’i sde, to support this enterprise, probably as a donor. According to Stein, ‘Jam dbyangs mkhyen brtse’i dbang po was a descendant of the sMug po clan, Gesar’s original clan. It appears nonetheless that Mipham technically and practically provided the scholarly and spiritual support to the monk responsible for the editing work, ‘Gyur med thub bstan. Just as in the case of Madhyamaka, it seems that ‘Jam dbyangs mkhyen brtse’i dbang po provided the vision and the inspiration whilst Mipham supplied the ‘technical follow-up’. In the absence of further research, the question is, and unfortunately, remains, what was ‘Jam dbyangs mkhyen brtse’i dbang po’s role in Mipham’s systematization of Gesar practices?

225 See Stein 1956, introduction.
Ad (2)

Although it is well-known that Gesar—as a manifestation of Padmasambhava *quā nirmāṇakāya*, Avalokiteśvara *quā sambhogakāya*, and Amitābha *quā dharmaśāyā*—belongs to the padma family, in two works written by Mipham, Gesar is identified with Mañjuśrī (e.g. T.67: 2; T.59: 22), or more precisely, the nature of Gesar is equated with Mipham’s personal deity. Gene Smith noted the parallel between the cults of Mañjuśrī and Gesar in relation to the Manchu political strategy of deliberately merging religious practices from Tibet, Mongolia, and China. Here again, Mipham seems to be intent on providing a coherent and fully systematized spiritual approach for his tradition, not only with regards to theory and philosophy, but also in the more practical context of Vajrayāna. Were the effects of the Manchu imperial policy so successful in Eastern Tibet that Mipham found it necessary to integrate the disparate Kuan ti rituals about divination, wealth or power into a single system in line with the highest teachings of his tradition (i.e. *rdzogs chen*)?

5.2 Ancient and modern socio-political factors in the arising of the Gesar cult

Karmay describes the society of the epic as being very close to that of Kham and Amdo. Gling culture is based on nomadic pastoralism. This is a polygamous clan society of patrilineal descent where endogamy is prevalent and

---

227 The Manchu emperor was considered to be an emanation of Mañjuśrī as were many other powerful Sa skya pa, dGe lugs pa, and *ris med* figures. China also was associated with Mañjuśrī (see Smith 2001: 267–268).
228 See also Helffer 1977: 519–562.
exogamy occasional. If we look at the the *ris med* Gesar rituals in relation to the Gesar epic, three main themes stand out: the nostalgia for the Tibetan Empire, the volatile situation of 19th century Khams, and the importance of magic as a social phenomenon.

5.2.1 The nostalgia for the Tibetan Empire

The Gesar practice texts translated above are full of references to the Tibetan Empire, like echoes of longing for Tibet’s long gone golden age. There is, especially in the rNying ma milieu, an element of ‘spiritual nostalgia’ for the time when Padmasambhava was still in Tibet, converting demons, and imparting the most profound instructions. The Gesar rituals, however, use these references not only to arouse inspiration in devotees but also to confirm that Gesar is the equal of the *btsan pos*, the emperors of Tibet, and that he, in fact, is himself a *btsan po*:

- The cultural setting of the epic and the rituals is that of ancient Tibet. The types of armor and arms clearly refer to ancient times. This is a world of fierce warriors mounted on horses and constantly on the move. Gesar’s court just like that of the *btsan pos* is mobile. The ancient oath culture binding the oath-takers together in life and death is all-pervading in the epic, just as it was at the time of the Empire. Oath-taking did not have only a religious connotation engaging the oath-taker’s life. The whole social and political structure was dependent on it

---

230 See LaRocca 2006.
231 Regarding hippology, see Blondeau 1972 & Maurer 2001. For comparisons with the context of the Gesar epic, see Hellfer 1977.
232 See Stein 1972: 118.
during the imperial time, as were, for example, treaty negotiations with China. The exercise of imperial rule was impossible in practice without oaths as the ‘glue’ holding the empire together. Likewise, the Gesar rituals were not based on the anthropological ritual concept of scapegoat but on the principle of reciprocity. The oath that is constantly referred to in these texts binds both sides—the practitioner and Gesar, with both sides contractually, legally, and spiritually bound by their pledge. As noted by Walter, Padmasambhava used these oath-taking rites extensively to impose a new order onto an environment already structured on this very basis, as did the fifth Dalai Lama who was considered to be the emanation of Avalokiteśvara and incarnation of Srong btsan sgam po. The cup rites used to consecrate the oath were widespread across India and China at the time of the Empire. The gser skyems (offering of a libation) found in Gesar rituals originates from a later period, but skyems as a drink (without the addition of gold pulver or nuggets) was often associated with oath-taking at the imperial court.

- Gesar’s private guard, consisting of the phu nu, the thirty braves, mirrors the emperor’s comitatus. This group of warrior traditionally shared the fate of the emperor; they would protect and serve him to their death. They were closer to him than his own relatives. This personal guard would accompany the emperor to heaven after death and join him in his celestial court. Walter explains,

The btsan-po was foremost a military leader, and most likely even a sort of Berserker. This is implicit in both the etymology of the title

---

234 This metaphor is found in Walter 2009: 11,174,181. See the annotated bibliography for an account of Walter’s contribution to the history of the Tibetan Empire.
235 See Walter 2009: 204.
236 “The original comitatus was drawn from six clans whose leaders allied with Gnam Ri slon Msshan” (Walter 2009: 28) In T.45: 74, ‘Jam mgon Kong sprul calls Gesar “sGra bla of the six human clans”.

292
and the principal function as war-leader of a tribal confederation with his comitatus. He had to lead in war by example, at least in the early period of the Empire. . . . The Tang historical records mention btsan-pos leading troops into battle and dying there. . . . “Wildness” was also the basis for a fundamental division in Tibetan society. Members of the armed forces were subsumed under the term rgod, indicating the unleashed “wildness” of the forces under their leader. Non-military population, on the other hand, were literally the “tame” (g.yung), i.e. subservient and even fearful of the rgod. . . . This description of the warrior element is reminiscent of the Berserker-style warrior behavior of many early Indo-European peoples. As is often the case in Tibetan categories, these terms found their way into religion, specifically in methods for the pacification of spirits.  

One could add that this resonates with the ‘raw approach’ of rDzogs chen or crazy primordial knowing (ye shes 'chol ba) of masters such as mDo mkhyen brtse or Chogyam Trungpa, among others, who both re-discovered Gesar gter mas. In this system of fearless ‘crazy’ warriors, lha-ness, the characteristic of

---

237 Walter 2009: 59 n.50.
238 For an account of smyon pas, see Stein 1959: 490-493. Since rDzogs chen together with Gesar almost came to be the popular religion of mGo log as noted by Kornman, I cannot resist quoting—from Kornman 1997—J.F. Rock’s account of what a ‘wild’ mGo log pa told him. This is somehow evocative of the ‘berserker mindset’ of the Empire’s warriors: “You cannot compare us Go-log with other people. You obey the laws of strangers, the laws of the Dalai-Lama, of China, and of any of you petty chiefs. You are afraid of everyone; to escape punishment you obey everyone. And the result is that you are afraid of everything. And not only you, but your fathers and grandfathers were the same. We Go-log, on the other hand, have from time immemorial obeyed none but our own laws, none but our own convictions. A Go-log is born with the knowledge of his freedom, and with his mother’s milk imbibes some acquaintance with his laws. They have never been altered. Almost in his mother’s womb he learns to handle arms. His forebears were warriors—they were brave fearless men, even as we today are their worthy descendants. To the advice of a stranger we will not hearken, nor will we obey naught but the voice of our conscience with which each Go-log enters the world. This is why we have ever been free as now, and are slaves of none—neither
nobility, was connected with heroic death in service to the emperor. Walter cogently shows the values making this system viable:

As we say, ‘What was their motivation?’ Immortality as a warrior, of course, but not only as found through the bard’s arresting lyric. There was a more direct religious motivation: That glorious death in battle was a way home.

In the epic, Gesar is allowed to ‘go home’, to the world of celestial beings, once his mission of pacification of the demons threatening Gling is achieved.

- Besides, that Gesar is associated with Avalokiteśvara is well-known. Srong btsan sgam po was also considered to be an emanation of Avalokiteśvara, just like the Dalai Lamas. Avalokiteśvara indeed became in the course of time Tibet’s principal deity although Khri srong de’u btsan initially promoted the cult of Vairocana. As a direct consequence of this process of identifying, the ruler with a deity, the political and institutional environment of the political ruler of Tibet qua deity became a full-fledged mandala. In this sense, Gesar is the divine and dharmic heir of the Empire: he represents the only source of legitimate political power. In a move somewhat mirroring the Qing policy with regard to this matter, the current interest in Gesar by the Chinese authorities and the temptation to make him a pan-Chinese figure seem to indicate that this political dimension of Gesar

---

Bogdokhan nor of the Dalai Lama. Our tribe is the most respected and mighty in Tibet, and we rightly look down with contempt on both Chinaman and Tibetan.” (Kornman 1997b: 78).  
239 Families were ennobled after relatives of three different generations had been killed in battle (see Hazod 1991: 205).  
240 Walter 2009: 120.  
241 See Uray 2008: 433–447 for Gesar, and Walter 2009: 96 regarding the cult of Avalokiteśvara in the Empire. Besides, in the Gling version of the epic, Gesar’s main consort, Brug mo, is an emanation of Tārā.
has not escaped their attention in a cultural context where the emperor traditionally is the ‘son of heaven’.

- Hence, Gesar’s descent from the realms of the gods is evocative of the way the btsan po arrived in Tibet as well as the claim to political legitimacy of the Chinese emperor himself, ‘the son of heaven’. As summed up by Hazod,

Die Herkunft der tibetischen Könige ist eine Herkunft von den Göttern des Himmels.\(^\text{242}\)

The genealogical origin of the Tibetan emperors is considered to be divine.\(^\text{243}\) gNya’ khri btsan po was called the Lord of dMu (d\textit{mu yi dbang po}). He descended from dMu heaven by means of the dMu rope (d\textit{mu thag}), which he also used to return to it at the end of his time on earth, just like Gesar returned to his celestial family at the end of his life in Gling. The clans of Gling and of the conquered countries around Gling supported Gesar in a way reminiscent of the relation between the btsan pos and the Tibetan noble clans.\(^\text{244}\) The parallels are striking.

- Gesar is, moreover, called by Mipham the \textit{sku bla} ‘personal protector/god’ of the emperor in the following verse: “Personal god (\textit{sku lha}) of the activity displayed by Khri srong de’u btsan for the happiness of Tibet and Khams” (T.44: 10). Srong btsan sgam po’s \textit{sku lha} was responsible for the health of the king’s body and bore the sound-stone (\textit{bla rdo}) of the king.\(^\text{245}\) It seems that Walter’s cogent interpretation of the \textit{sku bla} as beings who, originally both human and


\(^{243}\) Besides Hazod 1991, see also Walter 2009: 18–19.

\(^{244}\) See Walter 2009: 24–25.

\(^{245}\) See Sørensen/Hazod 2005: 277–278.
divine, were in charge the emperor’s affairs could apply to the above-mentioned verse. The *sku* refers here to the body of the king but in a sense that is much vaster than his physical presence. It also means ‘the extension of the Imperium’ (Walter 2009: 93). The *sku bla* would have been the group of nobles (of divine nature) in charge of the government of the Empire.²⁴⁶ The *sku bla*, as a collective term, therefore directly represents the capacity of the emperor to act. The power and force inherent in this concept probably became idealized and mythified in the course of time, becoming the personal god of the emperor. This semantic evolution can be further explained by the allophones *blallha* and by the bivalent nature of beings who are considered to be simultaneously human and divine.

- Finally, Gesar is directly presented as a *btsan po* by Mipham who calls him ‘Flower of the God Brahma’ (*tshangs pa lha yi me tog* in T.45: 84), which is an epithet of king Khri srong lde’u btsan.²⁴⁷ Moreover, Gesar’s celestial father is Sita Brāhma, the *sku bla* of Srong btsan sgam po (T.45: 60).

### 5.2.2 The volatile situation of 19th century Eastern Tibet

As a disputed region at the edge of Tibet and China, Khams has gone through a few difficult times since the beginning of the 18th century. The center of the Ris-med movement was the kingdom of sDe dge, in Khams.²⁴⁸ At the time when Gesar rituals became systematized by Mipham, the house of sDe dge was

---

²⁴⁷ Likewise, in Tsering 2003: 108 verse 123 (Tibetan),114 (German trs.), the author calls Gesar the ‘second Khri srong’ (*khri srong gnyis pa*). This association is also made in the Tibetan chronicle gDung rabs me long (17th century) and in the history of the rLangs clan, the *rLangs po ti bse ru* (see Tsering 1979: 163–165). 
²⁴⁸ Stein gives some historical elements regarding the kingdom of sDe dge in Stein 1959: 220ff.
collapsing and its kingdom disintegrating. Gene Smith shows how the ruling family became divided at the end of the 18th century as a result of sectarian hatred between supporters of the rNying ma and Sa skya schools.\(^{249}\) Traditionally, the first son of the family became the king while the second would be the abbot of the state Sa skya pa monastery.\(^{250}\) Problems occurred when the rNying ma school attracted the devoted support of some members of the sDe dge house. This was, however, soon followed by the rebellion led by mGon po rNam gyal of Nyag rong, an adjacent province. This event gave the dGe lug pa-controlled central Tibetan government a reason for sending troops to Khams, which once again tilted the balance of power towards another school, the dGe lugs pas. At that time, Mipham was about 17 years old, and he had to stay for a few months in mGo log, away from the Nyag rong chief’s invasion of sDe dge.

During the post-war period, in the 1870s, as the situation was still unstable, 'Jam dbyangs mkhyen brtse’i dbang po and later 'Ju Mi pham rgya mtsho had to take responsibility for many of the temporal affairs of the kingdom since they were much respected by all schools and people in power. Gene Smith describes the political situation of Khams at that time as ‘extraordinarily complicated’ (Smith 2001: 249). Indeed, in addition to the religious divisions, there were many other reasons why the kingdom was disintegrating. Thargyal shows how the social structure of the kingdom was undermined by a lack of manpower and the absence of a monetary system, which prevented any evolution of the social interactions between the king, the nobility, non-noble leaders, and taxpayers or dependents.\(^{251}\)

\(^{250}\) See Thargyal 2007: 47ff.
\(^{251}\) See Thargyal 2007: 37ff.
A number of estates started operating as independent mini-kingdoms taking advantage of the weakness of the central government of sDe dge:

In other words, in Dege there were state appointees who were under the supervision of the monarch through the cabinet ministers. So long as the central political apparatus was efficacious and intact everything functioned bureaucratically, but when the centre could no longer maintain this a tendency towards centrifugal process took place in Dege.  

The state of affairs became increasingly unstable, with all states and regions around sDe dge also being in extremely volatile political situations (e.g. mGo log, Nyag rong, and later Ba tang). Khams was an aggregation of about twenty-five states, kingdoms, and unruled areas. Border clashes and other occasional skirmishes could potentially involve either the Tibetan central government or the Chinese authorities. Rebels against the laws of sDe dge could easily find sanctuaries in neighbouring regions such as mGo log where they were welcomed and protected. The Qing empire tried to control the local nexus of power in Khams by granting titles, although its actual influence was in fact limited. Some officials and troops had, however, been posted in Khams since 1748, which, as one can easily guess, contributed to further complicating this situation, the control of which went well beyond what the house of sDe dge could handle. On the economic front, Han merchants were also present in Khams in significant

252 Thargyal 2007: 53.
numbers because the main interest from the bordering Chinese provinces was above all to keep the tea and salt trade going.\footnote{253 See Coleman 2002.}

As the internal cohesion of the kingdom began to crumble, and many political, social, and religious institutions were actively competing against each other instead of collaborating, the monasteries \emph{de facto} became the nexus of economic and social interactions on a magnitude that could not be ignored. This pattern was not something new in Tibetan history. The military expansion of the Tibetan Empire had compelled Khri srong lde btsan to increasingly rely on the \textit{sangha} as official representatives of the Empire ten centuries earlier.\footnote{254 See Walter 2009: 25.} This institutional emergence of the \textit{sangha} provided the Tibetan emperors with ‘a professional class of \textit{literati}’ that was necessary to rule the empire. The empire collapsed, and the monasteries remained the only institutions educating the administrators any form of government would need to run the country. A good illustration of this is how ’Jam mgon Kong sprul became recognized as a \textit{sprul sku} (‘reincarnation’ of an earlier master). In order to avoid losing a young promising monk to the government of sDe dge in need of a secretary, Si tu Rinpoche decided to recognize ’Jam mgon Kong sprul as a \textit{sprul sku} who was sufficiently connected with his monastery so that ’Jam mgon Kong sprul would need to stay. Not only was there to a certain extent a competition for the best people among monasteries and government offices, but the goals of these powerful institutions were not entirely aligned.
In this context, the king became a kind of super manager, more so than the warrior btsan pos had been. Although sDe dge was occasionally involved in armed clashes with neighboring states, it had no significant military troops of its own, having politically relied on the Mongols and the Sa skya school for more than a century. The ancient feudal and martial culture of oath must have indeed been quite limited:

Thus, it appears that most of the feudalistic characteristics such as enfeoffment, seigneurial immunities, warriorship, chivalry, dyadic personal relationship, homage, and fealty were absent from Dege.\(^{255}\)

As if this was not enough, in a cultural context where magic was a source of political power and legitimacy, the nobility of Khams was apparently not endowed with the divine powers of the mythic btsan pos.\(^{256}\)

5.2.3 Magic as the source of all (political) power

Subbotsky proposes the following definition of magic:

> In contrast to physical reality, *magical reality* is based on *magical causation*. At least four types of causal effects can be qualified as truly magical: (1) the direct effect of consciousness over matter, such as affecting or creating physical objects through the effort of will (*mind-over-matter magic*); (2) the sudden acquisition of spontaneity by a nonanimate physical object (*animation magic*); (3) a violation of

\(^{255}\) Thargyal 2007: 52.

\(^{256}\) For a description of the btsan pos’ magic powers, see Stein 972: 61.
the fundamental laws of object permanence, physical space, and time, such as one physical object inexplicably turning into another physical object in an instant (nonpermanence magic); and (4) when certain objects or events affect other objects or events in a nonphysical way, through similarity or contagion (sympathetic magic).

Magic can be further divided into mind-over-mind magic (e.g. spells affecting others’ minds) and mind-over-matter magic (e.g. spells or rituals affecting physical events in contradiction to fundamental physical laws). If we accept the definition of magic as ‘counterphysical supernatural causation’ in order to reach material or immaterial goals by means of mind, and if we understand the magical dimension of ritual, then we begin to recognize that magic pervades Tibetan society in the form of its numerous rituals:

Look around almost anywhere you find yourself in the greater Tibetan cultural world—in Tibet, certainly, but also in Bhutan, Mongolia, and the Nepalese Himalayas—and you see ritual.

Magic activated by means of rituals is all-pervasive in the traditional Tibetan society. At the time of ancient and imperial Tibet until the time when the Gesar rituals were composed, magic was power and power was magic. In a way, magic represents the capacity to change circumstances supernaturally instead

---

257 Subbotsky 2010: 5.
259 Cabezón 2010: 1. Cabezón proceeds to detail various rituals one might ‘bump’ into in the course of a single day in Tibet.
260 All the most important personalities in the empire were considered to be endowed with magical powers: “Those [seven wise king’s] ministers have, in truth, an almost magical (phrul) wisdom and knowledge, enabling them to invent new techniques and win duels of magic and illusion. The king, too, in his capacity as a ‘god’ is referred to with the same attribute (phrul-gyi lha btsan po)” Stein 1972: 132. Duel of magic seems to have been widespread at that time.
of being controlled by them. In the Tibetan view of everyday reality, human beings are dependent on circumstances in the form of external events or internal phenomena such as emotions or habits to the point of being effectively controlled by them. On the other hand, freedom is dependent upon having the capacity to control one’s environment instead of being controlled by it. The most powerful way to achieve this is, by definition, supernatural causation, namely, magic. Rituals are instruments to unleash this magic. They can have different purposes—relative (e.g. increase wealth), or ultimate (awakening)—but all of them rely on beings or representations that are supernatural from a materialist perspective.²⁶¹

Among such rituals, we find rites for protection, exorcisms (e.g. zlog pa), purification rites (e.g. sel, bsangs, tshan), ransom rites (e.g. glud, yas, bla bslu, mdo²⁶²), funerary rites, popular rites (e.g. gto²⁶³), apotropaic rites (e.g. klung rtsa²⁶⁴), tantric practices such as sādhanas and guru yogas, rites for prosperity (e.g. g.yang sgrub, nam mkha’), divination, etc. If we detail all the practices and rites involved in divination alone, the degree of sophistication and creativity employed by the Tibetan genius in this area becomes quickly apparent: ju thig (string divination), lhamb sgrub gi mo (bootlace divination), bya mo (bird divination), phyen ba’i mo (rosary divination), gzan ril sgril pa (tsampa ball divination), sog pa’i mo (shoulder blade divination), rde’u mo (pebble divination), ’bru mo (grain divination), rnga mo (drum divination), mdzub gu’i mo (finger divination), gnyas mo (song divination), nyal mollung bstan zhu pa (dream divination), lha phabs nas mo rgyag pa (oracle divination), mda’ mo (arrow divination), sho mo (dice divination), etc.

²⁶¹ This appears very clearly in works composed by modern masters, such as Thinley Norbu, in their writings about the nature of reality from a Vajrayāna perspective (see Thinley Norbu 2006).
²⁶² See Blondeau 1990.
²⁶⁴ See Karmay 1993a.
divination), pra mo (mirror divination), ′ur rdo′i mo (sling divination), and bya drug gi mo (six birds divination).265 We even find among rituals recreational practices such as glu rol, a ritual involving the offering of games, entertainment and music to local deities.266 What is the source of this magic, the source of supernatural power invoked through these rituals? For the Tibetans of this time, it would be what we would term ‘supernatural beings.’ The capacity to connect with, relate to, and invoke these ‘supernatural beings’ is crucial to produce supernatural effects. Human beings are human beings, limited by circumstances and and their previous actions (karma). Magical power comes from what is ‘superhuman’, and, as we have seen, ‘superhuman’ acts inform and pervade the Gesar epic.267

If we return to the socio-political environment of the ris med movement, it appears that the local rulers of sDe dge did not have either the magic powers of the btsan po or the fearless warrior features of mGon po rNam gyal of Nyag rong. Where Tibetan nobility retained a certain political role as in Khams, the yon mchod model (the institutionalized relation between the royal donor and his lama) resulted in ‘subcontracting’ magic to the sangha which de facto had a monopoly over magic and, in due time, political power.268 The original Tibetan political system had been built around an ‘inspired warrior-leader’.269 Political power had

266 See Buffetrille 2004.
268 As an interesting matter of fact confirming this theory, the only rites that the btsan pos refused to give up as they were introduced to Buddhism were those connected with the sku bla.
269 Walter 2009: 30.
two dimensions: horizontal and vertical. The horizontality of power was represented by the king’s capacity to rule his human subjects in the four directions, a feature of the Gesar epic in which Gesar subdues the four tribes surrounding Gling in the four cardinal directions. This is the plane where the warrior aspect of the inspired king first and foremost manifests. The verticality of the king’s power is represented by his relations with supernatural beings or by his supernatural origin, insofar as this supernatural origin guarantees his capacity to communicate with his ancestors and hence, enjoy the privilege of their supernatural powers. In the epic, when Gesar uses this ‘magic’, he is usually alone. When magic is used in a decisive fashion, the hero subjugates demons single-handedly without his troops and armies that are sent back as they are irrelevant in this context. The space between the zenith where supernatural beings abide and the nadir where human beings live represents the plane where the magic powers of the king manifest. In this sense, the king is an intermediary between the higher gods and human beings, as symbolized at a later period in the ‘mountain cult’. Samuel explains that “the view of political authority in the epic is inextricably linked with the question of shamanic power” (Samuel 1994: 55). This is also a feature of the rituals in which ‘supernatural beings’ take the form of worldly deities and more importantly, the trikāya. The question therefore arises, could this corpus of Gesar rituals and practices have been developed and systematized precisely at that time and in this place on account of the necessity to reconcile ultimate goals with more down-to-earth matters linked to the chaotic and extremely volatile situation of Eastern Tibet resulting from the incapacity of the

---

local ruler to display the powers of an inspired warrior-magician? The formulation of this question, ethnocentric as it is, seems to imply that the cult of Gesar is essentially the result of socio-economic factors. From a slightly different perspective, namely, the point of view of ‘Gesar practitioners’, the formulation of this question could, however, equally have been, did the corpus of Gesar practices manifest at that time on account of the needs, aspirations, and karmic connection with Gesar of the people of Eastern Tibet? A positive answer would make sense from an emic and an etic approach alike, but then the question would become, how were these Gesar rituals and practices supposed to attain their goals in the cultural and spiritual context of 19th century Eastern Tibet? In other words, what is the ‘cultural and spiritual logic’ of these rituals and practices?

5.3 The cultural and spiritual substrate of magic in the Gesar practices

5.3.1 Foundational myths in the Gesar epic

Although the Gesar epic is not part of the Gesar ritual itself, there is little doubt that the epic is to the ritual what the proclamation of the origin (smrang) is to the Bon ritual. A cursory look at the storyline of the epic shows that some important narrative elements are in resonance with thematic ideas found in key foundational myths of the rNying ma tradition:

---

271 It is explained in Tsering 1979: 169 that the cult of Gesar was very popular in sDe dge.
(1) **The thematic idea of the divine origin of the king in pre-Buddhist myths:**

In these autochthonous cosmo-theogonic myths, the king, like Gesar, descends from heaven in a time of chaos to establish a new world, which is the reason for his sacred nature.  

(2) **The thematic idea of the universal monarch (cakravartin) in the sense of the Indian Buddhist myth:** In the edition of the epic to which Mipham contributed, the chapter of the horse race was re-structured on the basis of the seven great symbols of a cakravartin (i.e. wheel, elephant, horse, magic jewel, queen, minister, and general). Great beings have the possibility to manifest either as a Buddha or as a cakravartin, his secular counterpart. Cakravartins have the same marks at birth than those of a Buddha. Gesar represents the universal monarch *par excellence*, and Stein even established many parallels with Alexander the Great. The Tibetan myth of the btsan po is compatible with the Indian myth of the cakravartin, which, in the case of the Gesar epic, is another factor of religious syncretism between Bon and Buddhism. The cakravartin as a supernatural being vanquishes his enemies, not to tyrannically obtain the submission of the conquered peoples but to *liberate* them without using violence. Likewise, in the epic, Gesar avoids mass battles; he *liberates* by means of magic and in a tantric and ritualistic way the demon ruling the country he wishes to conquer. Finally, like a cakravartin, Gesar is the monarch of the four quarters by virtue of his karma. As Penner explains,

---

272 See Karmay 1994: 408.
274 Walter 2009: 123 thinks that the btsan pos were probably from the beginning considered to be cakravartins.
Wheel-turning monarchs are superhuman agents; they do things you and me [sic] cannot do. What human kings do in comparison to them is quite irrelevant. They govern a universal realm just as the Buddhas teach liberation on a universal scale. The Buddha often spoke about Buddhist community, and the sangha, as a community of the four quarters. I do not think he meant India or the geography of a particular kingdom. As we have seen, the “four quarters” are clearly cosmic in significance.275

(3) The thematic idea of ‘recognition/awareness’ (dran pa) and sleep as found in the rDzogs chen myths of Samantabhadra and the amnesic monarch: The origination of rDzogs chen in the world is narrated by Klong chen pa in Theg mchod rin po che’i mdzod by means of the myth of Samantabhadra.276 In this narration, Samantabhadra, arising from the primordial ground of being before the separation into saṃsāra and nirvāṇa, recognizes the spontaneously present (lhun grub) primordial purity (ka dag) simply by means of knowing his own nature (rang ngo shes). Spontaneously liberating himself in this way, he achieves awakening as the dharma-kāya while the world appears from his own expressive power (rtsal). As Kaptein emphasizes it,

What is crucial for the Nyingmapa is that this account establishes an essential relationship between the primordial Buddha and sentient

---

beings, such that it be possible for us to recover the ground of our being and thus participate in Samantabhadra’s enlightenment.277

In another myth, in direct contrast with this one found in Rig ’dzin rgod ldem’s *Kun tu bzung po’i dgongs pa zang thal*, a king, allegorically representing mind, is under the influence of his five ministers, the five emotions (i.e. stupidity, desire, hatred, pride, and envy). He apprehends everything dualistically, unable to wake up from this fiction. One day, when the five ministers are not present, a man comes who begins to teach him *dran pa* ‘recognition’ or ‘mindful attentiveness’.278 This symbolic thematic idea of sleep as a loss of awareness also occurs on several occasions in the epic.279 When Gesar is still a child, Padmasambhava has to remind him of his mission. Later, in the bDud ’dul chapter, Gesar kills the demon of the North, Klu btsan, having received the help of the demon’s wife who then drugs him so that he completely forgets to return to Gling. Avalokiteśvara himself finally wakes Gesar up from his sleep. The symbolism of the demon’s wife is, on the secret level, fascinating: it is both that which destroys dualism and that which intoxicates. Since Gesar is generally accepted as an emanation of Padmasambhava, the *nirmāṇakāya* of Avalokiteśvara, and all are associated with the Padma family, the doctrine of the three *kāyas* manages to reconcile the apparent dualism of the narrative with the atemporality of Gesar as Avalokiteśvara, the two being ultimately not separated

---

278 This allegory is analyzed in detail in Kapstein 2000: 179–271. Kapstein suggests ‘mnemic engagement’ for the technical term *dran pa*. In the deepest sense, *dran pa* in the context of rDzogs chen means ‘the immediate recovery of the self-presenting awareness of the dharmakāya’ (see Kapstein 2000: 184): “In its most characteristic sense, then, dran- in Great Perfection thought as represented by Rikdzin Gödem refers to awareness qua awareness orienting itself to its proper ground.” (Kapstein 2000: 187).
279 Similar themes about sleep and amnesia are analyzed in Eliade 1998: 114–118 and interpreted as a ‘pan-Indian motif’ and are also found in Greek mythology.
from one another. The lexeme *dran pa*, like an echo to these foundational myths, is a common term in the Gesar rituals, showing that Gesar’s real nature goes well beyond its outer aspect owing to its polysemic character:

You [Gesar] who are amused by the dance of the joyful activities
[accomplishing] all desires,
Who ravish minds by [merely] being seen,
Who stimulate the fruition [of accomplishments] by being [merely] remembered (*dran pa*),
Who bring glory into being by being accomplished, owner of deathlessness and long life, . . . (T.85: 101–104)

(4) The thematic idea conveyed by the tantric myth of Rudra consisting in clearing the confusion resulting from the loss of recognition of one’s own nature by means of awakened confusion itself: In this myth of the rNying ma school narrated in Orgyan gling pa’s *Padma bka’ thang,* a disciple having received the highest teachings but misunderstanding them, when proven wrong, becomes mad with anger and turns against his teacher and the teaching, committing thereafter many evil actions. More than 20,000 lifetimes later, he is reborn as an extremely powerful demon that threatens the entire world, including the abodes of the gods. Finally, Avalokiteśvara and Tārā in the form of wrathful deities, Hayagrīva and Vajravārāhī, decide to combat the demon. Hayagrīva makes himself minute and enters Rudra’s body via the anus. Once inside, Hayagrīva grows into enormous proportions. Rudra is subdued. Hayagrīva now

---

280 Because of the complexity of this myth, the account given here has to be abridged. For the complete story, see Kapstein 2000: 170–176.
appears in the form of Rudra, and only Hayagrīva’s horse head is visible at the crown of Rudra’s head. There are many ways to interpret this multifaceted myth. In the light of the Gesar epic, it appears that a deep and persistent confusion, in the sense of sheer evil madness, results from misusing the teachings, the antidote to confusion, thereby turning the teachings into poison. To release those who have transformed the instrument of liberation itself into an instrument of slavery requires forceful and violent means. At another time, Gesar transforms himself into an iron bee to enter the body of a demon in order to liberate him. The message is clear: it takes a demon to liberate a demon. Awakened confusion is used to vanquish confusion itself. Chemin faisant, Gesar himself takes on the attributes of a powerful gnyan, mirroring thereby Hayagrīva’s appropriation of the form and magical powers of Rudra, like Siegfried, the Nibelungen hero, who, having killed the dragon Fafner and tasted its blood, suddenly starts understanding the language of birds. Thus the awakened mind takes the form of confusion and is then in a position to use the awe-inspiring energy of confusion itself in order to liberate confusion from confusion by confusion.

Through these thematic ideas found in the narration of Gesar’s adventure, the Gesar epic conveys the foundational myths of the Gesar rituals. The epic is also, but not only, a symbolic account of sacred history taking place in a time beyond any particular time. Foundational myths have, from this perspective, nothing to do with falseness; they actually represent accounts of a true ‘timeless’ story. A superhuman agent, Gesar, establishes a new order of things out of chaos.

---

281 See T. 12: 7–8 which explicitly refers to the myth of Rudra and identifies Gesar to Heruka.
282 For a similar interpretation of the relation between history and myth in the context of the Buryat version of the epic based on Dumézil and Levi-Strauss’s works, see Hamayon 1981: 159. Myths cannot be reduced to social practices and their temporality, in the sense of a medium communicating the historicity resulting from a given social consensus.
It is a cosmogonic act of creation typical of myths representing what Eliade called “the dramatic breakthrough of the sacred into the world”. The epic is the medium that makes the listeners aware of this ‘true history’. As in the case of the rDzogs chen myth of Samantabhadra, myth is not fiction but a perfectly valid disclosure of how things are beyond time and space in contradistinction to how things appear to be now. On a symbolic level, the myth of Gesar is true history because it deals with what is real, not with what seems to be real. The symbols conveying this may be particular to a certain time and a certain place for the sake of communication; in other words, they may be conditionable, historical, temporal, and dependent on culture, but what is pointed out by these symbols, the meaning, is universal. The atemporal nature of the Gesar myth, rooted as it is in the cultural and historical context of medieval Tibet, resounds like a direct answer to Arjuna’s interrogations in the Bhagavadgītā. The demonic aspect of illusion is not that it is happening but that it is taken to be real. Historicity is only an obstacle to the unconditioned insofar as the conditioned is taken to be real, otherwise, historicity, the conditioned, actually reveals the unconditioned, as is pointed out in rDzogs chen.

The meaning of the epic can therefore be understood on different levels: outer, inner, and secret, the common typology of tantric reality influenced by the doctrine of the trikāya. In this sense, there is no rejection of historicity but the necessity for its dépassement. Indeed, as Campbell observes,

From the perspective of the source, the world is a majestic harmony of forms pouring into being, exploding, and dissolving. But what the

---

283 When Arjuna sees his relatives in the army he must fight, he suddenly finds himself in a dilemma as he must choose between righteousness and killing his own kin.
swiftly passing creatures experience is a terrible cacophony of battle cries and pain.\textsuperscript{284}

The Gesar epic is an attempt to unify and integrate these various levels of reality into a coherent whole. It can be seen as a template for everyday life, an exemplary model of superhuman conduct inspiring human beings looking for meaning in the midst of apparent chaos. The myth here is not a tool to enforce social conformity through blind repetition of an archaic value paradigm. It is first and foremost an instrument made of archetypal symbols triggering specific states of mind and emotions conducive to imitation and behavior modelling. The Gesar epic \textit{qua} myth obviously aims at providing a model that shapes one’s vision and thus one’s actions. It draws on the map the hero’s journey, giving meaning and direction to those lost in the maze of meaninglessness and purposelessness. Campbell almost seems to describe the outer meaning of the Gesar epic, when he states:

\begin{quote}
The only way to affirm life is to affirm it to the root, to the rotten, horrendous base. It is a kind of affirmation that one finds in the primitive rites. Some of these rites are so brutal you can hardly read about, let alone look at, them. Yet they present a vivid image before the young adolescent mind: life is a monstrous thing, and if you’re going to live, you’ve got to live this way; which is to say, within the traditions of the tribe.\textsuperscript{285}
\end{quote}

\textsuperscript{284} Campbell 2008: 247.

\textsuperscript{285} Campbell 2004: 4. ‘Traditions’ in this sense does not refer here to the necessity of being socially conformist but emphasizes the fact that the ideas conveyed by the myth have been tested by time on a practical level.
On a more symbolic level, the Buddhist demons representing the monstrosity of life stand for the belief in self, belief in the reality of oneself and of phenomena, namely, that which divides the original ground that is primordially beyond union and separation. Gesar’s demons are tyrants: they have divided the primordially wide open and unimpeded space into four regions, symbols of the illusory boundaries imposed by the dualistic notions of a confined self. In a way, they represent the four extremes of Madhyamaka philosophy. Gesar is, in this context, the hero who fights his way out of the maze by dismantling all of his illusory and fictional limitations, be they outer, inner, or secret. As a being limited by time and space, he has to assert his own timelessness without negating his own historicity. In this sense, the myth of Gesar is extraordinarily complex: it is woven with the threads of myriad symbols, as Mipham displayed when he edited the horse race chapter along the lines of the seven treasures of a universal monarch, used on that occasion as a purely hermeneutical device. The main function of the epic, however, is relatively simple: it is to set a direction by offering meaning and purpose within the labyrinth of ordinary life, its baffling meaninglessness and bewildering chaos. The question arises, though, once the Gesar practitioner knows what is happening here and now, and where to go, how does (s)he actually get there?

5.3.2 The ancestral bsang rituals at the inception of the cult of Gesar

The bsang rituals were historically the first Gesar rituals, as we have seen above, and they represent the Gesar ritual par excellence. A bsang rite is usually
connected to a local mountain god. It is not just an offering of smoke where presents for the invoked deities are visualized as the smoke rises. In the Bon practices, the smoke offering was more of a fumigation, purifying defilements. The impurities (grib) eliminated by this rite are all those that stem from actions weakening the positive force of life and increasing the forces of disorder, including emotions such as anger, jealousy, etc., as well as the taints of evil acts such as murder of relatives, incest, etc. The concept of grib is very important in order to understand what exactly is purified by means of smoke. Schicklgruber defines its general meaning as ‘chaos’—anything that goes against harmonious ‘social order’. At its core, grib therefore represents disharmony, disorder. Bon and pre-Buddhist deities were to be purified from any kind of such impurities:

The Ge-khod deities in general, like the great lha-ri (mountain deities), are viewed as gtsangs-rigs lha (gods of the pure order), limpid beings who must not be sullied by human activities.

A Bon text translated by Karmay, “The Purification of Ge-khod’s Pollution”, shows that fumigation rituals of purification were probably originally linked to confession and repentance. For Buddhists too, the bsang is the means to eliminate contaminations affecting, offending, or provoking spirits, demons, and gods as a result of negative human actions, as is also obvious in the Gesar bsang rituals. Karmay shows that confession and repentance originally preceded the smoke rite, the rite of purification of the gods through the inhalation of the

---

289 See Norbu 1997: 112.
smoke.\textsuperscript{290} He stresses the fact that Buddhist deities cannot be affected by these *grib* and that a buddhist *bsang*

\[\ldots\] is based on a radically different concept. They always rely upon a specific deity for purification and the aim of the ritual is to obtain his blessing. \ldots The Buddhist rituals generally aim at ‘purifying’ the ‘pollution caused by emotions’ (*kleśa, nyan sgrīb*) and ‘sin’ (*pāpa, *sdig pa*) in the Buddhist philosophical sense of these terms.\textsuperscript{291}

While it is correct that the Gesar ritual integrates this aspect common to Buddhist *bsang* rituals as described here, it seems difficult to deny the fact that some beings for which the *bsang* is performed in Gesar rituals *can* indeed be affected by *grib* and, as a consequence, syncretic Buddhist rituals such as these often integrate the indigenous Bon conception of *bsang* as defined by Karmay, but limits the purification to worldly beings. The original concept of *bsang* was founded on reciprocity, as in the *glud* ritual, and not on the offering of a scapegoat.\textsuperscript{292} The aim of the *glud* ritual is to recapture what has been lost. The same is also somewhat true with purification by means of smoke. The goal of these rituals is indeed to eliminate impurities and to ‘recapture’ the original state of purity and harmony by means of purifying the *grib* so that the protective deities of the clan who are able to deal with demons, spirits, etc., will grant their protection. The purification is based on the principle of reciprocation ‘give and take’ in order to strengthen social harmony. The purification by smoke is therefore a revitalization of the sacred bond between humans and their ancestral protective

\textsuperscript{290} See Karmay 1998: 404–405.
\textsuperscript{291} Ibid.: 396–397.
\textsuperscript{292} Ibid.: 396–397.
deities in order to maintain this harmony. In the present case, it is based on the notion of the clan. Fragrant smoke here, as a means to communicate, is probably used because the protectors involved in a bsang were originally deities of the intermediate space (gnyan). In this section of the ritual, Gesar appears as a traditional ancestral mountain deity, the usual recipient of bsang offerings, who manifests in the form of a fierce gnyan.

Karmay defines mountain deities as follows:

By the mountain cult I mean particularly the secular worship of the mountain deity (yul lha, gzhi bdag), who is usually depicted in the style of a traditional warrior and is worshipped as an ancestor or an ancestral deity for protection. . . . The origin of the cult of yul lha-type mountain deities pre-dates the pre-Buddhist [sic] era.

Karmay explains that the mountain cult is related to the clan-based organization of Tibetan pre-Buddhist society and, as such, is a matter of social and political identity. The propitiation of mountain gods was associated with the obtainment of power, capacity, and good fortune (i.e. rlung rta, g.yang, srog, etc.). Their cult reflects this fundamental relation between clan identity and protectors. The protectors are the guardians of social harmony among the clan.

---

293 See Karmay 1994: 412.
294 For various examples of the mountain cult in a Tibetan and Himalayan context, see Blondeau 1998.
295 In the present ritual, Gesar is identified with a gnyan (SDG 8), a warrior (SDG 32–42, 65, 66–68, 70, 72–79, 82, 86), a mountain (SDG 71, 83, 84), a gzhi bdag (SDG 68).
298 See Bellezza 1997: 31 with regard to the cult of gNyan chen thang lha. A very interesting rNyin ma prayer dedicated to rMa chen, Gesar’s protector, shows Gesar as part of rMa chen’s retinue (see Buffetrille 2000: 160–161, cf. Buffetrille 2004a for a presentation of the recent evolution of the rMa chen pilgrimage).
members. Maintaining order and a certain level of cohesion requires their benevolence and protection. As mentioned above, supernatural power, magic, comes from supernatural beings. It is necessary because the ordinary nature of human life is brutal and tragic. Survival, in a way, is a supernatural deed. In the context of the Tibetan pre-Buddhist society, protective deities are associated with the ancestors of the patrilineal clanship. A certain level of social harmony and order was of primary importance to the clan as a key-aspect of society needed for survival and expansion. This connection between mountain deities, the ancestors, and the familial structures has also been associated with the myth of the first Tibetan king gNya’ khri btsan po\textsuperscript{299} although there is no evidence that \textit{bsang} rituals \textit{per se} were originally related with the Empire.\textsuperscript{300} However, the relation was made between the mountain cult and the vertical dimension of the first kings’ power that came as a result of being directly connected to their supernatural ancestors, a crucial factor in maintaining the cohesion of their confederation of clans. The cult of the mountain as the embodiment of the ancestral protector probably quickly developed a social and political function apart from its purely religious aspect. The mountain connects the celestial world of the ancestral \textit{lhas} with the earth,\textsuperscript{301} and is furthermore in itself a representation of the intermediate space in the traditional Tibetan tripartite segmentation of the universe.\textsuperscript{302} The

\textsuperscript{299} See Karmay: 2003: 69 For a detailed account of the relationship between the first Tibetan kings and the mountain cult, see Kirkland 1982. In this section about the mountain cult, the \textit{yul lha} is emphasized in contradistinction to the \textit{gnas ri}. Huber 1999: 11–57 establishes the main characteristics of the \textit{yul lha}/\textit{gnas ri} concepts.

\textsuperscript{300} Walter in his study about imperial Tibet has argued that \textit{bsang} rituals, however, do not make references to the Tibetan empire as such (see Walter 2009: 232).

\textsuperscript{301} Mountains are also called ‘pillars of the sky’ (\textit{gnam gyi ka ba}). They were sometimes identified with the \textit{dmu} ladder or rope used by the kings and the ancestors to descend from heaven and return there. It is seems that the \textit{bsangs} was originally used as a way to establish such a connection with the world of ancestors (see Stein 1972: 203,211,222).

\textsuperscript{302} See Hazod 1991: 213.
introduction of the Buddhist *mandala* in Tibet suggests yet another model confirming the pre-Buddhist and Bon beliefs. Gesar is, in fact, repeatedly compared to Mount Meru in the *bsang* rituals translated here. The stability of the mountain as the *axis mundi* that does not move but around which everything revolves is a multivalent symbol across the outer, inner, and secret aspects of so-called reality. This symbolic nature of the mountain in relation to this sacred genealogy is confirmed by the fact that a community, in the event of migration, could transfer its sacred protector associated with a particular mountain to another mountain. Tibetan kings were similarly carrying their ancestral deity within themselves. This was easily achievable since deities could take different supports (e.g. mountains, animals, people, or objects) for their *bla*, a process evident throughout the Gesar epic. The first Gesar *bsang* rituals were probably imitations of what Gesar does in the epic to worship his own protectors. In this respect, mundane attainments (e.g. luck, power, health, etc.) figure prominently among the objectives of the ritual, just as in other rites related to mountain deities. Yet, in the Gesar practices systematized by Mipham, the original condition of the great perfection, *‘rDzogs chen’*, the spontaneously present primordial purity, is what is meant by the allegory of the original supernatural ancestor. The state of sheer knowing (*rig pa*) is this ancestral, original, primordial supernatural power—supernatural from an ordinary perspective—both because it is beyond time and because all illusory manifestations within time are the expression of its creative power (*rtsal*). As such, it represents the fourth time that is not subject to decay and death, the time beyond past, present, and future, where nothing needs to be

---

303 See Bellezza 1997: 33.
added or taken away. The moment of power is the very nowness of the present moment, always as it has actually ever been. Past and future can only happen in the present. Even a thought about the past happens in the present and so does a thought about the future. Nonetheless, since the temporal surges as the expression or texture of timelessness (i.e. mdangs), there is a potential on this level for change and transformation, namely, magic. As Eliade explains,

It is here that we find the greatest difference between the man of the archaic societies and modern man: the irreversibility of events, which is the characteristic trait of History for the latter, is not a fact to the former. . . . On the contrary, what happened ab origine can be repeated by the power of rites. For him, then, the essential thing is to know the myths. It is essential not only because the myths provide him with an explanation of the World and his own mode of being in the World, but above all because, by recollecting the myths, by re-enacting them, he is able to repeat what the Gods, the Heroes, or the Ancestors did ab origine. To know the myths is to learn the secret of the origin of things. In other words, one learns not only how things came into existence but also where to find them and how to make them reappear when they disappear.304

This knowledge of the foundational myth and of the process to actualize it at will through the ritual forms the basis of magic, the method to obtain outer, inner, and secret accomplishments. In the Gesar practices of the ris med movement, the ritual is in this sense a ‘time machine’ with regard to primordial nowness.

304 Eliade 1998: 13–14. Stein, acknowledging the importance of myths of origin in the epic, touched the subject as well in his comprehensive study of the narrative (see Stein 1959:455–474).
According to the type of ritual performed (i.e. bsang mchod or sādhana), the Gesar practitioner becomes contemporary with Gesar’s *chanson de geste* and directly participates in it as one of Gesar’s companions, or recognizes in himself/herself what Gesar symbolically represents in his various aspects and forms. The Gesar ritual is therefore also a reenactment of the foundational myth, something often noted by anthropologists, since from the perspective of the Gesar practitioners, myth is not fiction but an account of the real. This probably explains why the early Gesar bsang and gsol mchod rituals were in time accompanied by various ‘practice texts’ and instructions such as sādhanas, man ngag, snying thig, etc. The cult of Gesar, as such, is an etic label. It is never used within the tradition. From an emic perspective, one speaks of Gesar as a protector, a yidam, or a manifestation of the guru, and his practice is not cut off from the rest of the tantric teachings one would receive in one’s tradition. It remains part of one’s path as a component that is not distinguished from the rest in any particular self-conscious way. As we have seen, Gesar is fused with the rDzogs chen teaching in the ris med tradition. As in all Tibetan tantric practices, receiving the information is a first step in order to apply it, and thus actualize the primordial freedom from the illusion of chaos and bondage. But passively receiving this information contained in the practice texts is not enough. As one may be caught by an image, a symbol, and remain particularly committed to it, one is ‘seized by the sacred’—to use Eliade’s expression—as the gates of the original time are opened by the guru. This is the transmission of power (*sbyin rlabs*) connected with the empowerment ritual (*dbang*) or the entrustment of the life force of the wrathful protectors (*srog gtad*). In the case of Gesar who appears as a fierce mountain god, this magical power to
access what is beyond the conventional aspect of reality is conveyed by the *dgra bla*, a multivalent symbol that operates on all three levels: outer, inner, and secret.\(^{305}\)

5.3.3 The multivalent symbol of the *dgra bla* as the source of magic in the Gesar rituals

The representation of facts, things, or persons as symbols is a way of dealing with ‘reality’ that is explicitly accepted in the epic.\(^{306}\) In many a ritual, Gesar is repeatedly called *dgra bla*,\(^{307}\) a key term to understand his symbolic meaning and transformative function. The *dgra blas* are pre-Buddhist protective deities, appearing as fierce warrior gods (*gnyan*), together with the *wer mas, thug kars, cang sengs, dra mas*, etc.\(^{308}\) Their function was to protect the group from attacks perpetrated by demons spreading epidemics, diseases, or any other calamity that might affect the clan.\(^{309}\) They are sometimes considered as being part of the ’*go ba’i lha lnga*.\(^{310}\) These spirits were worshipped in Bon and traditionally propitiated through smoke offerings (*bsang*).\(^{311}\) The *dgra blas* were gods of the intermediate space, symbolizing movement, and were identified with the *gnyans* and the mountains. Some of these deities, such as the *wer mas*, have zoomorphic characteristics, appearing partially or completely as animals. It is difficult to

\(^{305}\) Although in Bon the *sri pa’i sgra bla* were considered higher than *lha ri*, both were very similar in appearance and in the way they were related to (see Bellezza 2005: 510–51). *gNyam chen thang la* is, for instance, also called ‘the chief *dgra lha* of Tibet’ (see Bellezza 1997: 39).


\(^{307}\) *sgra bla, dgra lha, or dgra bla* are used sometimes in the same text as synonyms. For the sake of consistency, *dgra bla* is used in the present study.

\(^{308}\) The origin of these names is unknown. They might have originally referred to particular bataillons or elite troops of the Empire army. See the annotated glossary above.

\(^{309}\) See Hoffmann: 1950: 171.

\(^{310}\) The five personal deities protecting each individual. See Dagyab: 2002: 64.

determine whether these features are to be taken literally or whether they refer to
totemic representations worshipped by warriors for their qualities in pre-Buddhist
Tibet.\textsuperscript{312}

Additionally, dgra blas are related to weapons. For instance, the nine sgra
bla brothers were associated with nine weapons (sgra bla’i go mtshan sna dgu) which, in the Bon text rGyal bu gzhon nu rol brtsed kyi mdo,\textsuperscript{313} were purified by means of a bsang. This archaic warrior ritual related to one’s personal protective spirits symbolized as the sharpness of one’s blade or the invulnerability of one’s armor (see also SDG translated above) could have been at the origin of the cult of the dgra bla, which might explain why the original Bon orthography sgra (‘sound’) became dgra (‘enemy’, ‘warfare’, ‘hostility’, etc.). In the epic, Gesar’s weapons have names, and they represent ‘supports’ (rten) for various deities.\textsuperscript{314}

According to Bellezza, the supports (rten) for the sgra blas in the Bon gZi brjid rituals are arms and armor.\textsuperscript{315} In this text, the rGyal bu gzhon nu rol brtsed kyi mdo, five other sgra blas come from places which are located at the border between two dualistically opposite worlds (i.e. darkness and light, friends and foes, etc.). It is interesting to note that these protective deities are, on the highest level, connected with non-duality. From a more practical point of view, weapons such as swords symbolically represent the intermediate state—the space—between life and death, friends and foes, etc. It is probable that in the pre-Buddhist Tibetan feudal society, warriors offered their arms and armor as support (rten) for the spirit (bla) of the protective deities of their clan, bringing these arms and

\textsuperscript{313} This is the fifth chapter of the gZi brjid, the extended biography of gShen rab mi bo. This chapter has been analyzed in Clemente 2004.
\textsuperscript{315} See Bellezza 2005: 390.
armor to ‘life’, which would explain why names were given to them.\(^{316}\) For instance, in the Bon tradition, bShen rab mi bo requests the *sgra blas’* help and, following his invocation, they ‘embody’ themselves into weapons. Likewise, in Gesar’s epic itself, three sacred bows are the support for the *bla* of the Gling people, and all his weapons bear names describing their divine qualities.\(^{317}\) This also shows that, just like in SDG translated above, the offerings to the *sgra blas* were not conceived as scapegoats but were based on mutual obligation and reciprocation in the context of an ancestral pact unifying the clan and its environment represented by mountain deities who protected the group against untamed malevolent elemental forces personified as demons.

Regarding the different spellings of this term: *dgra bla* or *dgra lha* are usually used in Buddhist texts, and *sgra bla* in Bon. There are various interpretations as to what each means. The pre-Buddhist term was certainly *bla* as it contrasts with the concept of *grib* and fits perfectly with the embodiment of the *bla* into weapons. Although the notions of *lha* and *bla* were probably very close in ancient times,\(^{318}\) the *bla* was originally the protective force, the vitality, of a group, place, or any other entity, resulting from harmonious conditions. In the case of a given social group, the *bla* could be weakened by *grib* (disorder, disharmony). Indeed, the spirit (*bla*) of a social group and its environment depended in ancient times on the harmony between clan members, and on the


\(^{317}\) See David-Néel/Yongden 1992: 87 for bows as support of gLings’ *bla*.

\(^{318}\) See Karmay 2003: 69.
harmony between humans and their environment. Hence the importance of avoiding *grib*, the actions leading to disharmony which had to be purified by fumigation (*bsang*) or lustral sprinkling (*tsen*). That the embodiment of this spirit of harmony protecting the group came to be worshipped and propitiated as a protective deity is quite plausible. This could explain the subsequent confusion between the *bla*, the spirit of harmony as a vital force necessary for the clan’s mere survival, and the demon (*lha*) in the sense of the Greek term *daimôn* that was conceived as a being whose benevolent activity was decisive for the group’s survival. Further research is necessary to determine how the assimilation of the pre-Buddhist *bla* into the Buddhist *lha* occurred in the course of time but Karmay and Norbu’s studies show that such a development from *sgraldgra bla* to *dgra lha* did happen over the centuries.

As for *sgra* or *dgra*, it seems that *sgra* is more archaic than *dgra*. Some explanations about the meaning of *sgra* (‘sound’) are quite sophisticated and rely on the fact that sound, although not visible, enables communication and invocation. On account of this explanation, since the *sgra lha* was probably originally the spirit (*bla*) of the clan’s protective deity which had been summoned, for example, into arms and armor, the original meaning of *sgra* most likely pertains to Bon words of invocation such as *bswo*, which were used to summon ‘travelling’ spirits symbolized by the deity of the intermediate space, the *gnyan*.

---

319 “*Bla* is the animating principle or force that permits one to be aware of oneself and the external environment. It emanates from both the *sems* and *yid*.” Bellezza 2008: 363.
320 See for example Ramble 1998: 130ff. for a ritual of purification by means of smoke.
321 See also Gibson 1985: 68–69.
322 We have to distinguish here between the orthography and the meaning of *sgra* and *dgra*. The spelling of whatevever was meant by *sgraldgra* was probably not completely established in ancient times.
324 See Bellezza 2008: 320.
This is only a supposition but it is possible that, in a martial feudal society, fine weapons were believed to be produced by summoning a deity, then offering the deity the sword or mail coat as a support for its spirit (*bla*) in exchange for its special qualities. The spirit would become the ‘soul’ of the sword, a *sgra bla*, ‘the vital-force, or protective spirit, [summoned by way of] sound’. In fact, as Karmay explains it, the *bla* can dwell outside of its owner’s body; a turquoise can be used as a support for the *bla*. Confirming this theory, Bellezza explains,

The gZi brjid goes on to relate that, having warded off the attack, sTon-pa gshen-rab obtained the weapons and armor needed to invoke the *srid-pa’i sgra bla*. . . . As a prelude to these invocations the incense and offering articles are presented to the deities.

The expression *srid pa’i sgra bla* is quite interesting. It seems to indicate that, in the pre-Buddhist vision of reality, all possible—or at least existing—entities had a *bla*. This explains why even now the *bla* is felt to be a condition for existence by Tibetans who consider something or someone deprived of *bla* as being in jeopardy. Bellezza translates this whole passage of the gZi brjid confirming this theory: sTon pa invokes his lineage of ancestral deities and requests the *Srung btsug*, an ancient ritual through which the *sgra blas* were invoked for protection and during which the armor, the weapons, and their owner’s head and right shoulder were anointed with butter. There is a parallel with this in Malaysia where a dagger, the *keris*, becomes the support for a spirit which becomes like its ‘soul’. The spirit is propitiated, in connection with the

---

326 Bellezza 2005: 381.
327 See Bellezza 2005: 382.
owners’ ancestors, by the keris empu (bladesmith) by means of offerings, and the keris becomes endowed with the magical properties associated with the spirit. Bellezza accordingly observes,

These ancient practitioners are recorded as having established the tabernacles (rten) needed as supports for the deities during their ritual evocations. These receptacles are set up to contain the deities whose presence is essential if one is to benefit from their manifold capacities. . . . This practice of enshrining deities in physical objects is one of the foundations of indigenous Tibetan religious traditions.328

Based on this principle, it is not difficult to imagine what warriors might have been tempted to do with their weapons—or their own bodies. This explains why dgra blas are identified with the ‘sharpness of the blade’, and other similar qualities, and first and foremost, why the sgra became dgra on account of the association between this invocation and warfare. The ‘spirit of the clan invoked by means of sound’ (sgra bla) became ‘the god of warfare’ (dgra lha). There is, however, an even more fascinating alternative to this interpretation: the ‘deity’ enshrined into weapons might have been the spirit of the enemies. In this case, there would be two further possibilities: the enshrined deity could either be the spirit of the killed enemies themselves, or the captured guardian deities of the enemies. We know, for instance, that the guardian deity Pehar was brought back by the Tibetans following one of their conquests over the Turkic Bhaṭa Hor.329 In the epic, Gesar often has to weaken the enemy’s protector or bla before fighting

the demon-kings on the occasion of a direct and final confrontation. Berounský has recently translated texts that support the idea that dgra lha stands for the enemy’s bla. This interpretation relies upon several arguments. The Tibetans pronounce dgra lha as ‘dabla’ which actually corresponds to the spelling bla. In Dunhuang documents the orthography of the second syllable of this term is consistently bla. Last but not least, in the texts translated by Berounský, the bla of the enemies is captured and turned against them as a weapon by means of a specific ritual. A doubt nonetheless subsists as to why these dgra blas would have been worshipped by means of rituals such as bsang that are eminently related to the ancestors of the clan, the opposite of the enemies? Somehow, this hypothesis seems after all quite problematic.

An answer to this question might be found in the fifth chapter of the gZi brjid, called rGyal bu gzhon nu rol brtsed kyi mdo. In this text, gShen rab mi bo is provoked by a demon coming from the sky as he finds himself in a park together with his retinue. The black demon throws down upon the prince, amidst magic flames, nine meteors made of metal. gShen rab mi bo deflects them and, as they fall against a tree, they turn into the nine weapons of the sgra bla (sgra bla’i go mtshon sna dgu). Thereupon, gShen rab mi bo resolves to perform a bsang to purify the weapons. He invokes his ancestors and offers them a libation. The deities he summons belong to two main groups:

1. The sgra blas residing at the border between opposite worlds:

---

330 For example, Gesar destroys the yak which is the support of Klubtstan’s bla before killing the demon himself (see Karmay 1993b: 236).
331 See Berounský 2009 which is the most complete study to date about the dgra blas. What follows relies upon Berounský’s findings.
332 See Clemente 1994 for a detailed analysis of the text. My understanding of this passage of the gZi brjid relies upon his study and choice of terms in English.
From the border between origin and being (ye yod kyi so mtshams), gShen-rab mi-bo invokes the ‘sgra bla of both being and non-being’ (yod med gnyis kyi sgra bla): Khyung-nag g.yu’i ral-pa-can (Black khyung with a turquoise mane), the Lord of all Existence who dwells in the world of non-being, while watching from the world of being. . . . From the border between darkness and light (mun snang gi so mtshams) he invites the ‘sgra bla of light and darkness’ (snang mun gi sgra bla): mKha’-lding gser-gyi-spyan-mig-can (Golden-eyed mkha’ lding: a mythological eagle), who pervades both light and darkness, residing in the world of darkness and watching through the lamp of light.\(^\text{333}\)

Then he also invokes the sgra bla from the border between the negative and positive poles of existence (ye ngam gyi so mtshams), the border between origin and aspiration (ye dang smon pa’i so mtshams), the border between enemies and friends (dgra zun gyi so mtshams).

(2) The sgra blas of the brave armies (shas can dmag gi sgra bla) from the supreme shrine of the fighters (rgyug chen bya rdang gong ma). These are the nine Dra ma brothers who each represent a magical weapon or piece of armor that has the power to function by itself (rang).

Following this invocation, the weapons are presented as support (rten) for the sgra blas. The words ‘ki bswo che bo—may the gods be victorious’ conclude this part of the ritual. The sgra blas using the smoke as a pathway descend into the weapons while gShen rab mi bo declaims the sacred history of his ancestors of

the dMu clan. Having done this, he explains why he needs and deserves their help: he is the son of the lineage and he has been attacked by a demon who threw at him nine meteors in which nine sorts of impurities (mi gtsang rdzas cha sna dgu) were contained (i.e. impurities from murder, illegitimate children, incest, grib, misfortune, widowhood, defilements, contaminations, and bad omens). The sgra blas descend into the weapons and gShen rab mi bo makes them his. Clemente concludes,

The prince has accepted these nine bad omens and changed them into luck and prosperity (g.yang), which is symbolized by the transformation of each of the nine impurities into the nine weapons of the sgra bla.\(^{334}\)

What can be learnt from this myth? What do the symbols of this myth represent?

The weapons as supports for the sgra blas are provided by the enemy. They represent the elements, in other words, the outer or objective aspect of reality. Yet, they hide within themselves the impurities that are, in fact, the real weapons capable of harming gShen rab mi bo. These impurities hidden in the metal meteors indicate that the nature of the elemental objects is not material. At their core, these metal weapons are negative emotions and their related evil behaviours. This is reminiscent of the idea that the external world is a reflection of the inner world. There is no absolute reality on the material level of the elements. They are merely crystallized emotions. The reality ‘out there’ is utterly dependent on mind. The apparently solid objective world is nothing but the mere reflection of inter-

\(^{334}\) Clemente 1994: 131.
subjectivity; it is shaped by emotions that, when negative, turn out to be weapons. This is the ‘material’ that gShen rab mi bo is going to use to forge his own weapons: he has to turn negativity into something positive, without losing the power and functionality of these negativities which he needs. The ensuing ritual, as a process, is therefore a reenactment of a supernatural act of creation, made possible by the very fact that reality is mind-made. To use Subbotsky’s typology, magic is, in this context, always mind-over-mind, although it appears to be mind-over-matter in some cases. At this stage, we are on the outer level of reality, which is shaped by the inner level. Both are dualistic. Things can be conceived of as positive or negative. Now, the only way gShen rab mi bo can accomplish the magical creative act is by invoking the supernatural powers of his ancestors who reside in a plane that is not dualistic. The first five groups of sgra blas are fascinating from the perspective of symbolism. They come from the borders between opposite worlds. They reside in non-form or non-being but they function in the sphere of form and being. Their nature is non-being (it is always defined in apophatic terms) but their capacity and function is within the sphere of being (it is described in cataphatic terms). They are non-dual. Since they are his ancestors, they symbolize the secret primordial, original condition of gShen rab mi bo manifesting itself on the outer and inner levels of reality in a sacred act of empowerment. To conclude, by knowing his own original nature (e.g. the myth of origin) and how to activate it (e.g. the bsang ritual), gShen rab mi bo is able to turn negativities, psychological and material, into something positive and functional that he can use on these levels. By having access to the sphere of non-duality represented by the sgra blas, he can use the energy that manifests within
it, even if it is negative—a theme also found in Vajrayāna as shown above in the rNying ma myth of Rudra. Because of this tripartition, the *sgra blas* have a triple nature: they are beings, virtuous mental states, and non-duality. In other words, they can appear as something objective (i.e. intersubjective), as pure subjectivity, or as the non-dual nature of mind. They are (1) mind’s outer projection appearing as elements (matter), (2) mind as an inner phenomenon (i.e. mental events), (3) the secret nature of mind, namely, that which is beyond ‘outer’ and ‘inner’ (*rig pa*). This symbolism is seen everywhere in the Gesar epic and the Gesar rituals. In his study of the epic, Stein notes the ambivalent nature of the hero.335 Gesar’s ‘banner of victory over the battling incompatibles’ shows that he is bringing together that which is fundamentally incompatible. This banner of three pairs of mythic animals known to endlessly fight each other is made by merging each pair into one hybrid animal.336 A cursory look at all these materials shows that Gesar is indeed a gate or passage-way connecting opposite worlds:

(1) as a *gnyan* (spirit of the intermediate world), Gesar connects the luminous wide open celestial world of the *lha* (Gesar’s father) to the dark chthonian world of the *klu* (Gesar’s mother), symbolizing in the context of the ritual, the empty luminosity of the origin in opposition to the dark and confusing power of the elements;

(2) as a *dgra bla*, Gesar resides in a space which is between two dualistically opposed worlds (light/darkness, etc) as explained above;

336 See Tsering 1979: 175–176 for the iconography of the banner. The pairs of animals are: lion/garuda (*seng ge/khyung*), fish/otter (*nya/sram*), and shell/sea-monster (*chu srinldung*).
(3) as a syncretic worldly deity, Gesar brings together the Bon Tibetan cultural substrate and the Indian *Buddhadharma*;

(4) as a yidam, Gesar connects ‘impure vision’ with ‘pure vision’ through ‘the vision of the path’ as he himself represents the path;

(5) as a virtuous mental state, the ‘projector’, he stands right between the completely dualistic objective world, the ‘projected’, and the completely non-dual nature of the projector, empty luminosity. Hence he is frequently referred to as the jewel that grants all wishes. Gesar projects reality as the practitioner wishes, it is literally the meaning of this name ‘Jewel’;

(6) as a symbol, Gesar is, in a rDzogs chen context, at the border between the verbal and the non-verbal, between words and that which cannot be uttered;

(7) as a warrior-king who is the emanation of Padmasambhava, Gesar finds himself at the border between the *cakravartin* and Buddha models, combining the secular and the spiritual.

(8) as a path, the practice of Gesar is neither simply concerned with mundane matters such as wealth, health, and power, nor exclusively about the ultimate attainment independentl from ‘lower goals’.

(9) with regard to authority, Gesar, as the perfect embodiment of the trickster figure, rebels against all forms of worldly authority, yet ends up being the king of kings.
As an archetype of Vajrayāna imagery pointing out the way things are, Gesar’s symbolism can therefore be used in multiple ways. His function is to link the three dimensions of being, to open and guard the gates between them, and to conquer the enemies (outer, inner and secret) blocking the way. In that sense, Gesar represents the inconceivable functionality of awakening embodied in the so-called four activities (‘phrin las).

The dgra bla as a multivalent symbol reflects the multifaceted quality of reality. Integral to Tibetan culture and world-view, the dgra bla unifies into a coherent and familiar whole that which is multiple and appears contradictory or paradoxical, without losing the quality and functionality of this multiplicity. For those who have been repeatedly exposed to the symbols contained in the myth, the Gesar epic, the context and meaning of the symbols become part of the practitioner’s subconscious so that the ritual does not have to re-state or intellectually explain them. A few keywords alluding to the symbols, such as ‘dgra bla’, are enough to trigger a myriad of associations or resources that can be used with regard to the objective of the ritual. The symbol becomes a shortcut embodying volumes of explanations that can be interpreted in relation to the context. A symbol such as ‘dgra bla’ should therefore not be exclusively interpreted as an historical concept. Questioning whether something such as a dgra bla ever existed as an historical phenomenon is certainly intellectually stimulating, but thinking that this is the only way to relate to this concept is bound to miss the point of the dgra bla as a multivalent symbol pertaining to three planes, not just one. Most of the time, this fact remains hidden to the uninitiated, which might lead to misunderstandings when the symbol is explained by someone.
who has no contact with the tradition. From a methodological perspective, one can only see that which one is equipped, prepared, or conditioned to see. This is why in tantric Buddhism the empowerment or initiation is an important moment in which the meaning of a symbol in its various aspects is disclosed to the practitioner. This sometimes disturbing unveiling of the sacred (or in Eliade’s words, this ‘hierophany’) is, ideally, the direct—sometimes brutal—revelation of the multifaceted nature of reality. However, when the symbol is taken at face value, it does not work, as in Naropa’s ordeals. This disclosure of the sacred in a non-dual way can be recognized at every moment and everywhere, and this ‘empowerment’ can be taken again and again in Gesar—as in other tantric—rituals. The symbol as a glyph wandering through the ages is like a magic cipher left behind for those who can read it; it is both openly left behind and simultaneously invisible for those who have not been introduced to its multifaceted meaning. It could, as such, theoretically remain forgotten for centuries, and be re-activated at a later time to open the gates leading to the manifold nature of reality. In all practicality, anything that manifests is a symbol of this reality, and in the present case, anything can be used as a support for or seen, from the highest perspective, as a manifestation of the dgra bla. The historicity of this symbol also need not be negated: from a practical point of view, it can make things easier as it offers a familiar sign leading to the unfamiliar. Quenching the thirst of the practitioner’s physiological and psychological needs on the outer level does not preclude transcending them. The hunger for power within the sphere of the conditioned can ultimately only be satisfied by awakening from the illusory world where so-called reality takes place. However, from an
ordinary perspective, when this ‘ultimate quest’ happens in a brutal and uncompromising way, the mythic person appears to be mad, a common theme in Tibetan spirituality. As one is seized by the nature of the real, the non-dual understanding of the symbolic condition of all manifestations results in simultaneously having the fabulous power to shape these fictions and a complete lack of clinging to success. The outer manifestations of reality are seen as a show, the scenario of which can be co-written as it unfolds. This radical shift of perspective becomes apparent in the epic once Joru (Gesar before he has won the horse race) has been reminded of who he is and what he has to do. Since this exposition of the nature of reality is unveiled through symbolic stories, the recitation of the epic is in itself a sacred performance that should be accomplished on specific days as described by Stein and Eliade.\footnote{See Stein 1959: 318–319,452–455 and Eliade 1998: 9–10.} Telling the epic is revealing the sacred, albeit in a less dramatic and intense way than is done the rituals.
6 Magic and the three levels of ‘reality’ in Gesar rituals

If we take a cursory look at the bSam pa’i don grub ma, it appears that this bsang ritual explicitly accepts three ways to destroy demons—a feature emblematic of Gesar’s polymorphic nature in the context of such a tantric ritual:

- On an ordinary level, a warrior-shaman, Gesar, is prima facie invoked to ruthlessly eliminate all demons and obtain wealth and prosperity;
- On a more psychological level, negative emotions, as demons, are pacified and positive states of mind can prevail as a consequence;
- On the ultimate level, primordial knowing (ye shes) consumes ignorance in the sense of a lack of recognition of the reality of things, just as they are.

These three levels of experience are also termed ‘outer, inner, and secret’ (phyi, nang, gsang). They represent a recurrent theme found in all tantric rituals in a way or another although they are not always explicitly thematized. Based on the teaching they have received, participants can emphasize one particular aspect or the indivisibility of the three through the doctrine of the three kāyas.

---

338 Tenzin Namgyal 2002: 14 sums it up in the following way: “When we identify ourselves as substantial, physical entities, we will naturally try to ground ourselves in substantial, external conditions. When we identify as energetic beings, we will try to ground in our feelings. When we identify with pure awareness, we will find the ground in the nature of mind.” Our text alludes to these three levels on several occasions, often in the form of typical coded formulae that do not exclusively refer to the material or outer aspect of reality: ‘five awakened dimensions of the King’ (rgyal po sku lnga SDG 58); ‘fire of primordial knowing’ (ye shes me SDG 48); ‘the four demons’ (bdud bzhi SDG 92); or by explicitly referring to a plane which is not only outer and physical but inner and emotional (e.g. SDG 90–91). The notion of offering substance is also typical of this typology: the material offerings correspond to the outer level of the ritual (SDG 4), the visualized offerings to the inner level (SDG 18–21), and the fire of ye shes to the secret level (SDG 48). In the present case, secret means ‘difficult to experience, hidden’.

339 Such a typology of demons is for instance found in a text written by the famous ris med master rDza dPal sprul O rgyan ‘Jigs med dbang po (see Weishaar 1999).
These three levels of the ritual are not mutually exclusive but simultaneous. They correspond to three different visions or perspectives of a single reality. Rituals such as *bSam pa’i don grub ma* cannot therefore be reduced to shamanic exorcisms. They are in fact multidimensional practices. In this tradition, it can be stated by way of generalization that the way of the *śūtras* is connected with the outer level of ordinary and seemingly objective reality, the tantric teachings with the inner level of emotions and symbols as the expression of the magic that shapes the outer world, and rDzogs chen with the secret perspective of reality just as it is. Corresponding to these various perspectives on reality, Gesar can manifest as a protector, a yidam, or the guru. As a *dgra bla*, Gesar can signify all three different aspects: a being, the mind, and the nature of mind corresponding to the three aspects of reality (manifestation, luminosity, and emptiness).

### 6.1 The outer level of the ritual

#### 6.1.1 Gesar as entity

In the ritual, Gesar is presented as a being of divine origin in agreement with the epic. When the various episodes of the epic are merged, it is possible to identify five main phases in Gesar’s life:

1. **Before descending to earth**, Gesar lives in heaven as a god called Thos pa dga’.

   Following Padmasambhava’s exhortation, Thos pa dga’ is chosen to protect...
Gling by taking birth there and becoming the king of this country. This part of his life represents the myth of origin described above. It is interesting to note that Thos pa dga’ is at first reluctant to leave the heaven where he abides as he realizes what this implies. Padmasambhava eventually manages to convince Gesar that his help is necessary to protect the Buddhist Dharma and sentient beings. Thus, Gesar’s journey is not the consequence of his thirst for worldly gains such as wealth or power. It is made in complete awareness of the hardship it represents for him. As explained by Campbell, the mythic person does not live for Maslow’s values (e.g. the fulfillment of physiological, psychological, emotional needs and self-actualization). As Campbell puts it,

Mythology begins where madness starts. A person who is truly gripped by a calling, by a dedication, by a belief, by a zeal, will sacrifice prestige, and will think nothing of personal development; he will give himself entirely to his myth. . . Maslow’s five values are the values for which people live when they have nothing to live for. Nothing has seized them, nothing has caught them, nothing has driven them spiritually mad and made them worth talking to. These are the bores.  

Answering the call to adventure is what Campbell termed ‘crossing the threshold” into the unknown and the unconscious, and in this particular case, into the chaos and confusion of the human world. Indeed, Maslow’s principles cannot explain Gesar’s decision to leave the harmonious, conscious, and peaceful way of life of the gods to descend to earth and fully experience the dark side of dualism.

341 Campbell 2004: 89.
The only reasonable explanation for this is that Gesar is made aware by Padmasambhava that—in Campbell’s words—“the hero journey through the threshold is simply a journey beyond the pair of opposites, where you go beyond good and evil”,\(^3\) which corresponds to what we have seen above in terms of the dgra lha symbolism. Crossing the threshold means—from the perspective of the symbol—abandoning the power of non-dualism. As a consequence, Gesar requests companions and special weapons to support him in his enterprise.

(2) Having thus accepted his mission, Gesar is born in Gling from a gnyan and a klu.\(^4\) In Bellezza’s words, he is the son of the divine dyad of mountain and lake. However, Gesar’s father is absent from his early life; he is raised by his mother, unprotected, like many Greek heroes such as Heracles and Achilles. As a young human boy called Joru, he possesses supernatural powers yet looks weak and abject. Some think he is a demon. The main leader of the Gling people, his uncle Khro thung, hates him and attempts but fails to kill him. This part of his life, ‘le stage d’obscurité’,\(^5\) may be the model for the ways Gesar is believed to be a protector for times of crisis and why his rituals are reputed to be effective against depression, discouragement, etc. It is also worth noting that an epic as an illustration of the mythic hero’s journey often mirrors the stages of human life; in this episode, Gesar’s story mirrors the phase of adolescence. As in many other myths, this is the time during which the hero is in exile and is constantly threatened. In this first part of his life on earth, Gesar shows himself deeply rebellious vis-à-vis inapt mundane authority as represented by his uncle. Joru

\(^3\) Campbell 2004: 115.

\(^4\) Gesar has two families, one on earth and one in the heavens. For a glimpse in his complex genealogy, see Stein 1959: 508–513 and Chichlo 1981:17 for the Yakut version of the epic.

looks weak but he is extremely smart, cunning, determined, and sometimes quite manipulative. There is an abundance of humour in the epic. Tricks and deceptions taking advantage of the gullibility or cupidity of proud but silly rulers are in constant play from this phase onwards and remain a hallmark of the epic. That uncontrolled emotions running amok make one stupid seems to be a running theme throughout the narrative insofar as emotions are understood to shape outer reality.

(3) Padmasambhava reminds Joru of his mission. Joru turns himself into a crow and tricks Khro thung into organizing a horse race that will decide who will rule Gling. Eager to become the next king, Khro thung organizes the race but Gesar wins it. The horse race represents Joru’s birth as Gesar. This is the archetypal second birth or re-birth found in many myths. The horse race is reminiscent of puberty rites. Through initiation, the period of crisis and doubt, symbolizing adolescence, is finally resolved, and the hero emerges from darkness, the symbolic womb of his nāga mother, into the light with the shiny appearance of a gnyan, having recovered the arms and armor of his ancestors in the mountain at rMa shel brag, an episode that is evocative of gShen rab mi bo’s obtainment of the dgra bla’s weapons. Gesar has become a man, he has gone from a state where he was useless to the group to a state where he leads the group. As an important element of this symbolism, Gesar marries ’Brug mo and turns into the mighty king of Gling. By winning the horse race, he decisively puts an end to self-appointed authorities and becomes himself a legitimate authority crowned by the people. The indomitable trickster is on his way to become an emperor.
(4) At the age of 14, Gesar organizes a great bsang ritual to purify the world (dzam gling spyi bsang). This ceremony paves the way for the conquest of the four great demon-kings surrounding Gling in the four directions. These demons represent the apex of dualism: “The characteristic of monsters is that they mistake the shadow for substance.” As the shapeshifter par excellence, Gesar repeatedly uses magic and illusions to deceive and destroy his enemies. The symbolism here seems to be that demons, who themselves can use magic, take illusions for real things and are determined to do anything to keep them for themselves: the demon of clinging arises from the belief in the solidity of hallucinations. Since these demons conflate the fictional with the real, they are bound to remain blind to Gesar’s magic, which Gesar perfectly understands. Following these subjugations, the hero embarks on a sequence of wars against kingdoms such as sTag gzig, Kha che, China, India, Nepal, etc. In this phase of his life, Gesar presents himself as an invincible conqueror who is both a warrior and a magician. He represents the dynamic power of transformation as the opposite of mental fixation. All his adult life is spent conquering new enemies or fortresses, and overcoming obstacles. He is in this sense both the gate opener and the guardian of the doors leading to a better life.

Yet, there is a puzzling element in his evolution. As Gesar keeps destroying demons and sometimes even their offsprings, it seems that he almost becomes one of them. In other words, the question arises, since he apparently perpetrates monstrous deeds, why is he not himself a demon? The part of the polarity that seems to be ‘out there’ becomes internalized within the hero himself. So has the

---

345 See Karmay 1993b: 240 ff. for a discussion of the four kingdoms surrounding gLing.
346 Campbell 2004: 129.
young and rebellious hero become an old and cruel tyrant? In fact, the character arc of Gesar follows that of Hayagrīva in the myth of Rudra. Having dismantled the symbols of duality, Gesar takes onto himself their attributes and powers:

[As fas as my] appearance [is concerned], I am the butcher who slaughters,

[As far as my] essence [is concerned], I am the guru who leads.\(^{347}\)

There is nonetheless a difference between Gesar’s wildness and the demons’ savagery: the demons’ actions are caught in double-binds, bearing the mark of duality, whilst Gesar’s wildness is the seal of natural freedom. Direct experience—or its absence—of the indivisibility of the three aspects of reality marks the dividing line between these two. From the perspective of the epic and the rituals, when the wild man tames the demons in a seemingly destructive act, he paradoxically exposes them to the nature of reality which automatically liberates them from their condition of being bound by duality.\(^{348}\)

(5) When he is 87, Gesar departs to his original place, returning to heaven in an ultimate apotheosis—or rather a last illusory transformation!

**6.1.2 Invoking the outer dgra bla as a being**

As we have seen throughout this study, Gesar and his retinue are invoked by oaths made by the parties involved in the ritual. The invoked deities are given outer, inner, and secret offerings, and asked to perform their appointed activities.

---

\(^{347}\) Translated from Helffer 1977: 350, canto 54.

\(^{348}\) For an analysis of the wild, the tame, and the tamer in Tibetan society, see Samuel 1994: 66–72.
The practitioner of the ritual also has to keep the tantric pledges that have been made.

If we try to reconstruct Gesar’s retinue on the basis of the deities invoked in the various translated rituals, we obtain the following list (see the indexed glossary for details):

- guru SDG 6,22,52; T.43: 6.
- yidam SDG 6,22,53; T.43: 6.
- three jewels SDG 6.
- Buddhas of the three times together with your sons SDG 54.
- five bodies of the King SDG 58.
- peaceful and wrathful deities SDG 53.
- ḍākas, ḍākinīs SDG 8,22,56; T.43: 6; T.85: 21.
- ma mos T.85: 21; T.85: 394.
- dharmapālas SDG 8,22,57.
- protectors SDG 57.
- Sita Brähma T.45: 60.
- king of the nāgas, gTsug na rin chen T.45: 62.
- younger brother Klu sbrul ’od chen T.45: 64; T.85: 391.
- ’Do rje rkyang rgod pher bo (Gesar’s horse) T.85: 381.
- aunt gNam sman dkar mo T.45: 65; T.85: 393.
- lCam srid Tha le ’od phram T.45: 66; T.85: 395.
- red gNyan stag of the *dgra blas* T.45: 67.

- rDo rje legs pa T.50: 7; T.85: 384.

- sMan btsun rdo rje g.yu sgron ma T.50: 7; T.85: 385.

- rMa rgyal rDo rje drag rtsal T.85: 386.

- great warlord Mig dmar T.50: 7; T.85: 383.

- four aspects of the great secret mother T.50: 7.

- hundred thousand servants of the sMan retinue T.50: 7.


- five sisters of longevity SDG 60; T.85: 396.

- hosts of deities of the four classes of *tantras* SDG 7.

- noble śravakas, pratyekabuddhas and arhats SDG 55.

- nine Dra ma brothers of the *dgra blas* T.85: 399.


* dgra blas of the six human clans (mi bu gdung drug) T.45: 74—nine hundred ninety thousand *dgra blas* T.45: 76.


- king of the battling kings SDG 64.


- thirty-three knights (*dpa’ bo*) SDG 11,24,63; T.45: 69; T.67: 9; T.85: 411.

- seven beings that are the noble braves (*yang thus*) T.45: 70.

- three valiant ones (*zhe thus*), falcon, eagle and wolf T.45: 71.

- three hundred commanders (*sna ’dren*) SDG 12.
- eight powerful deities of the road (lam lha gnyan po [mched brgyad]) of the cang sengs T.85: 407.
- gods of the klung rta T.85: 397.
- five deities of the individual T.85: 404.
- guards SDG 12; T.85: 22.
- eight classes of gods and demons SDG 59; T.50: 7; T.67: 10; T.85: 26.
- haughty spirits (dregs pa) T.50: 7; T.67: 10; T.85: 413.
- nine ma sang brothers T.50: 7.
- sMan T.45: 72.
- nāgas SDG 61; T.50: 7—armies of the nāgas T.45: 77; T.85: 392.
- armies of the gnyans T.45: 77; T.85: 390.
- seventy glorious protectors gTsang rigs T.45: 78.
- btsan T.50: 7.
- lords of the earth (sa bdag) SDG 61.
- local gods (yul lha) SDG 9,61; T.45: 80.
- spirits owning [this] land (gzhi bdag) SDG 9; T.45: 79.
- local deities (zo dor) T.45: 80.
Another frequent iconographic representation used as a support (*reten*) for Gesar and his entourage—in the present case a thangka described in Tsering 1979: 169ff.—displays the following figures around Gesar riding Kha dkar rkyang:

- above Gesar is Padmasambhava with Śantideva on his right and Khri srong de’u btsan on his left.
- in the front stand Gesar’s three private guards: on the left, Glag zhe thul (Eagle hero), in the center, Khra zhe thul (Falcon hero), on the right, sPyan zhe thul (Wolf hero).
- on Gesar’s right stand his wife ’Brug mo and Nis Chung (’Brug mo’s cousin).
- all around Gesar are *wer mas* endowed with animal forms:
  
  (1) the four elemental deities controlling the four elements are Bya rgyal khyung (*garuḍa*), Gangs seng dkar mo (white lion), rGya stag dmar po (red tiger), g.Yu ’brug (turquoise dragon);

  (2) Dung khra hor pa (white falcon), rGo ba (antelope), gYag rgod (wild yak), Glag ba rogt po (musk deer), Blo gsal ri bong dkar lu (clever white rabbit), Dred mo sog dkar (white-spotted bear), Ser nya (fish), sBrul ljang (green snake), gZig (leopard), Khra (falcon), Glag (eagle), a blue wolf, a yellow owl (’Ug pa ser po), and a white vulture (Thang dkar rgod po). Each animal performs a particular task, such as protecting Gesar from darkness (white falcon), from poison (yellow snake), from uncertainty (vulture during the day and owl at night), from snakes (musk deer), whereas others provide him with what he needs to accomplish his mission (i.e. food is supplied by the blue wolf, advice by the wise rabbit, tenacity by the bear).
6.1.3 The ritual as a method to perform outer magic

If we analyze the *bSam pa’i don grub ma*, a typical example of a Gesar *bsang* ritual, we can distinguish twelve main parts:\(^{349}\)

1. [SDG 2]: The first stage is the homage to the guru, in this case Mañjughoṣa.

2. [SDG 3–4]: The second stage consists in the preparation of material offering substances: the golden beverage (*gses skyems*), the substance to be burned in order to produce the required smoke (*bsang*) [see SDG 4], the best food (*zas phud*), the flour-butter (*phye mar*) and varieties of fragrant incense (*dri zhim spos sna*) [see also SDG 47–49].\(^{350}\)

3. [SDG 5]: The third stage involves receiving one’s yidam, which leads to spiritual power (*byin gyis r labs*) through the practice of the corresponding *sādhana*. Without this stage, the ritual would be meaningless since *samayas* operate within a given transmission and lineage connecting the practitioner of the ritual with the awakened person who first made the invoked being pledge himself as a protector. This continuity of the transmission links the practitioner to the protector who is going to be invoked. This is not simply a connection based on an event which happened in the past. The nature of this bond consists in being spiritually connected through one’s practice with the mission of the protector, for instance, protecting the *Dharma*. In a real sense, the transmission from guru to

\(^{349}\) As noted by Gaenszle 2007: 145ff., “Ritual speech is a means to create and manipulate the relationship with the counterpart”, and as such, there are three main rhetorical strategies in rituals dealing with superhuman beings: ‘situating’ in the sense of connecting the ritual with the context, presenting the offerings, making requests.” Each of the twelve parts of our ritual, the dedication of the merits excepted, belong to one of those.

\(^{350}\) Regarding the various kinds of offerings and symbols or objects found in the ritual, Dagyab 1992, Beer 2003, and Beyer 1988: 148–154 are important resources.
student is purely dependent on the transfer of living knowledge of how things are, and not on a formal membership in any specific group, school, or tradition. By virtue of the sincerity of their spiritual goals, practitioners of Gesar are bound by their promises. Gesar, himself, is bound by specific pledges [see SDG 80 and SDG 96], and so are the various beings (gods and demons) invoked in the ritual. Moreover, the level of understanding and realization of the practitioner in relation to her/his yidam conditions the way this practitioner understands Gesar’s nature. As we have seen, protectors can be understood in different ways, outer, inner and secret. On a practical level, the practitioner goes through his/her sādhana. The state attained by this process depends on his/her spiritual capacities. The purpose of the sādhana practice is not to produce a state of trance or altered state of consciousness, rather the ideal result is that the practitioner sees things as they are; the sādhana functions as a reminder. From one point of view, any ordinary state of consciousness, whatever it might be, is a trance, and it is the ultimate goal of the sādhana to put an end to this illusory reality. It is therefore inappropriate to characterize the invocation of the yidam as a ‘trance’ simply because this phase which is the basis of the whole ritual is, for outsiders, very similar to the ‘shamanic journey’ of non-Buddhist rituals.

---

351 It is understood here that primordial knowing (ye shes/jñāna) is not a dualistic state of consciousness (rnam shes/vijñāna).

352 Gaenszle 2007: 186 explains in a wonderful way how the ‘journey’ can be identified in the context of a Mahawang Rai ritual: “In comparison with other sections the journey parts are generally more monotonous, and the priest’s gestures tend to be withdrawn and undramatic. This is the time when audience attention is relatively low, and people may turn to chatting or some other activity.” Although, as stressed above, things are quite different in the context of Buddhist rituals, similar features can be observed at the beginning of tantric rituals during the important phase described above, right before ‘ritualized action’ (purification through smoke offerings, ransom, etc.) happens.
(4) [SDG 6–15]: At this stage, the gurus, yidams and dharmapālas are invoked and invited to participate to the ritual. They are invited in an order which is classical in Vajrayāna. The three roots (rtsa gsum, namely, gurus, yidams, ēdiśis and dharmapālas) are first invoked, with the three jewels (Buddha, Dharma, Saṅgha) immediately following. The oath-bound deities come next. This is the general invocation. This particular one relates to Gesar and his retinue.

(5) [SDG 16–17]: Homage is paid to this assembly by the participants whose three doors (body, speech, and mind) must be pure. This refers to the sacred pledge or commitment (samaya) binding the practitioners in the totality of their own being to their spiritual endeavor. The whole ritual is based on this notion of samaya. Without it, no communication is possible. Samaya, as described above, works in both directions.

(6) [SDG 18–25]: Then, offering substances are mentally visualized and offered to the three roots and Gesar. It is interesting to note that an important shift in the ritual occurs at this stage. The offerings are not of a physical nature like in stage 2 but are imagined, visualized, by way of mind. The notion of offering substance is consequently radically transformed and carried to a new level which is obviously not dependent on materiality anymore but on mind. The sphere of operation of the ritual, which was the outer physical world, is now completely shifting in direction to a more subtle, inner dimension of reality. At the end of the ritual, a final shift will occur, as we shall see, to reintegrate the mundane level of physicality (requests to increase riches, etc.).

353 These substances are explained in details in the translation of the text.
(7) [SDG 26–29]: The following step pertains to the ‘authentication’ of the ceremony-master by the lineage so that the ritual works as desired. Again, this involves a commitment, a bond, with obligations on both sides: the assembly will accomplish the desired activities and the practitioners will not be lazy, or indifferent to their pledges.

(8) [SDG 30–46]: Gesar is invoked by means of his war cry. This war cry (kyi ki ki la swo swo swo) has a symbolic function linked to samaya—knowing the war cry shows that one is part of Gesar’s clan. In fact this part of the Gesar ritual, when performed in public, has the symbolic function of re-establishing the brotherhood (phu nu), the social structure of those linked by the same samaya. This, as a result, strengthens the mutual obligations of the members of the clan and has the important social function of re-mobilizing the group as the best possible protection against any kind of adversity. In addition to the basic purpose of any war cry, such as cheering up troops, or enhancing cohesion, this kyi ki ki la swo swo swo has the function of activating Gesar by reminding him that one belongs to the same brotherhood, the phu nu, within the context of the Tibetan clan-based feudal society. Gesar practitioners usually yell loudly the ki ki swo swo in a quite uninhibited way. The Gesar war cry is supposed to be wild and fearless, and seems quite similar in its nature to the final jump and cry of the maori haka tarapahi. The semantic field of this passage which is not for the faint-
hearted is accordingly almost exclusively related to war. Gesar’s help and protection against various evils are vehemently requested by means of his heart syllable. From the perspective of a worldview where every thing and every being is a symbol, a mere name, nothing but a mark left by the seal of luminous emptiness, the entire universe is made of cyphers. Knowing secret names, or secret heart-syllables, is knowing the nature of things. Knowing the nature of things is being able to control them. In this passage, Gesar is summoned as an invincible gnyan whose task is to destroy—mercilessly—all hostile forces. A remarkable feature of this passage is that the practitioner appropriates for him- or herself the enemies’ wealth or attributes; the interpretation as outer, inner, or secret is based on how one understands the meaning of ‘enemy’. This symbolic appropriation of the enemy’s qualities following his defeat is also found in Indo-Tibetan Tantrism where the victorious Heruka takes for himself the attributes of Rudra, as mentioned above. The whole passage is a respectful yet fervent and poetic exhortation to act. It is accordingly formulated in the imperative mode with several rhetorical figures of speech. The only lexeme of the text expressing intensity through reduplication (rgyug rgyug) is used on this occasion.358

(9) [SDG 47–85]: The purification ritual by means of smoke (bsangs) per se begins at this stage. The ritual proceeds through a litany of names of transcendent and worldly beings who have stakes in this purification process. The focus is then on Gesar, who, compared to the preceding stages, is perceived less like an outer being and gradually more as the emanation of particular positive qualities (the invulnerability of armor, the sharpness of blade, etc.). In this section, there is a  

357 See [SDG 38]: “Slay [our] enemies, take their wealth” ldgra bo la sod dgra’i nor longi
358 It is built by merely reduplicating the morpheme rgyug.
remarkable switch: Gesar is called dgra bla. His nature becomes slightly ambiguous since dgra blas are presented as the embodiment of particular positive qualities.

(10) [SDG 86–95]: A short ritual of suppression (bzlog pa) of negativities, obstacles, and demonic activities by means of the wrathful seed-syllable (bīja) bhyo follows the bsang. The expression bzlog pa means ‘to drive out’, ‘to send back’, ‘to drive away’, or ‘to eliminate’. There is no room for negotiations in this part of the ritual. Gesar’s most wrathful activity is simply requested to terminate all hostile forces. The actions to be performed by Gesar are very direct.

(11) [SDG 96–108]: The final requests made to Gesar are related to the four activities (‘phrin las) but since the activity of wrathful destruction has been extensively dealt with in the previous sections of the ritual, the three remaining actions are stressed (pacifying, increasing, and conquering).

(12) [SDG 109–112]: The last part concerns the usual dedications of merit together with a few verses of aspiration.

To conclude on this point, the essence of the ritual on the outer level is to invoke the dgra blas to turn the entire environment into a sacred space as the dgra

---

359 According to Norbu 1997: p243, n.18: “The four actions (phrin las bzhi) are: pacifying (zhi ba), increasing (rgyas pa), conquering (dbang pa), and wrathfully destroying (drag pa).”

360 Apart from emphatic stylistic formulations expressing grandeur, such as poetic metaphors, many words indicating politeness (honorifics) are used throughout the ritual, particularly, at the time of making requests in the imperative mode while directly addressing Gesar (for instance, mdzod SDG 46,79,96,100, or dbu SDG 33). In fact, the apostrophe as a rhetorical figure of speech is employed twice (SDG 10,23) in order to specifically address Gesar. As an aside note, this ritual speech genre is not really a dialogue in the sense that it is not expected that Gesar manifests his approbation or that he answers in order to accept the ‘deal’ offered by the officiant. However, as in other rituals connected to dharmapālas, some outer signs or manifestations such as thunder, rainbow, etc., which can be interpreted in various ways, may occur at some point in the ritual.
blas take possession of their support. In this respect, it is important to do offerings with precision; the environment should be clean; and as always in such rituals, the intention of those participating in the ritual should be positive with regard to other beings.

6.2 The inner level of the ritual

6.2.1 Gesar as mind

As we have seen, the ritual is a symbolic replay of the epic. On the inner level, mind is dismantled by means of mind in order for primordial knowing to manifest. The transformative power of this approach is not a psychotherapy since mind is never separated from its sacred primordial nature in this process. Gesar as a dgra bla can also be innerly invoked within the practitioner by eliminating and purifying the grib, the negative or disharmonious emotions. The inner Gesar and his companions, the phu nu, therefore symbolically represent the sacred positive force of the awakened mind together with its positive qualities (e.g. renunciation mind, loving-kindness, intelligence, determination, strength). On this level, the ritual has two main goals: (1) to lead to awakening; (2) to improve life circumstances (i.e. rlung rta ‘good fortune’, srog ‘vital force’, and dbang thang ‘field of power’). The philosophical background within which this is carried out is Yogācāra-Madhyamaka in the case of the cult and practice of Gesar systematized by Mipham. The Gesar rituals are based on the understanding that there is no so-called reality apart from mind, a basic Buddhist tenet. The Sanskrit word buddha means ‘awakened’. Our ‘reality’ that we take for granted is not what it seems to be—like dreams, magical illusions, and hallucinations. From this Buddhist point
of view, we are in fact constantly in a sort of waking trance, which explains why we need to ‘wake up’ since we do not see things as they are and are therefore bound to go through unpleasant experiences on account of this. We believe that things are permanent and independent wholes instead of seeing that reality is made of (1) generalizations that do not in actuality correspond to anything real; (2) spatially and temporally extended phenomena arising in dependence upon causes and conditions that are themselves impermanent and relative. According to this view, everything we conceptualize (generalities) or directly perceive (particulars) is fictional when analyzed. It consists merely in ‘information’:

In Buddhist philosophy, anything that is perceived by the mind did not exist before the mind perceived it; it depends on the mind. It doesn’t exist independently, therefore it doesn’t truly exist. That is not to say that it doesn’t exist somewhat. . . . We are in a deep sleep, hibernating like a silkworm in a cocoon. We have woven a reality based on our projections, imagination, hopes, fears, and delusions. . . . When we have not realized emptiness, when we don’t fully understand that all things are illusions, the world seems real, tangible, solid. Our hopes and fears also become solid and thus uncontrollable.\textsuperscript{361}

In this system, our ‘reality’ is illusory, consisting of experiences that are nothing but substanceless hallucinations inseparable from mind. Within a single day, we go from one trance to the next by deleting or not seeing what is there (i.e. impermanence) and generalizing (i.e. perceiving wholes instead of their parts). These distortions lead to superimpositions in terms of existence and nonexistence,

\textsuperscript{361} Dzongsar Khyentse 2007: 66,67,78.
and are made possible by the focus of attention upon a tiny part of the ‘big picture’—reality as it is. To comprehend what is meant by this, we could use as a metaphor the western concept of hypnotic trance phenomena such as confusion, subjective time distortions (backward/forward), identity progression and regression (e.g. age regression), dissociation, amnesia and hypermnesia, sensory distortion, positive/negative hallucination, daydreaming, etc. To illustrate this, suppose one initiates a ‘friend trance’ with somebody one has just met, then a ‘fight trance’ as conflict arises. From a Buddhist perspective, a friend is perceived where there is none (positive hallucination), an enemy is perceived where there is none since one forgets all the good things this person might have done (negative hallucination), and—for the sake of the demonstration—as one remembers minute details showing how bad this person is (hypermnesia) and associates this experience with childhood issues (age regression), one keeps on arguing for ages about something insignificant (subjective time distortion). Trances are a narrowing of attention in a fragmented manner which we cannot control. So-called reality happens to us as a continuum of such experiences. According to the view at the core of Gesar rituals, what we see ‘out there’ is not the real world at all but our own internal representations, our own trances: all we have in mind are bits of information, ideas, not real things. We find ourselves in our own ‘reality tunnel’ which is none other than the continuum of our daily experiences, a prison that is more or less comfortable and spacious, namely, the ‘reality’ filtered and shaped by our beliefs, representations, conceptualizations, perceptions, and

362 In his book entitled *Trances People Live*, Wolinsky uses an innovative conceptual framework regarding the notion of reality that integrates theories found in Buddhism, Hinduism, quantum physics, and Ericksonian psychotherapy (see Wolinsky 1991). I use in this chapter Wolinsky’s terminology regarding ordinary reality and the waking trances of everyday life, since it is a convenient way to explain the philosophical view upon which the Gesar rituals are based.
emotions with which we identify ourselves. The Buddhist paradigm of the six worlds presents various karmic visions classified according to the emotions at their inception. In this view of the ‘real’, the issue is not so much the illusory show, ‘reality’ itself, but the ensuing identification, attachment, and clinging. What we are, our identity, is the result of this pattern and what happens to us is nothing but the ‘path of least resistance’ with regard to the way we process reality, both in terms of content (script) and in terms of sensory modalities (visual, auditive, etc.) as displayed in figure 1. To conclude on this point, all dualistic states of consciousness relying upon a subject and an object represent, in this context, a form of trance state, as schematized in the following figure:
In the case of mind-over-matter magic, as defined by Subbotsky, it is assumed that physical objects are not cut-off from consciousness.\(^{363}\) According to Mahāyāna, there is nothing real on the side of the object (be it demons or gods like in the present case).\(^{364}\) These objects are, from this perspective, nothing but a cognitive experience.\(^{365}\) Ultimately they are not what they seem to be. As such, they have no independent existence and are therefore ‘manipulatable’ since they depend on causes and conditions. This represents the philosophical background of the Gesar rituals whose aim—on the inner level—is to balance the emotions and attitudes at the inception of the outer reality by reshaping and structuring beliefs, values, and the perception of reality. In a word, mind is set in a different way so that reality on the outer level manifests according to what is deemed positive. The principle here is that different emotions result in different combinations of external elements, ‘out there’. These external elements are conceived as crystallizations, solidifications, or fixations of what is by nature both flowing and inducing the flow of experience: emotions as mental events. Outwardly as well as inwardly, the transformative power of the ritual is based on the Buddhist doctrine of causality or dependent arising (pratītyasamutpada). Things do not arise randomly but on the basis of causes and conditions. As a result, relative reality can be changed by changing causes and conditions. On the strictly inner level of

\(^{363}\) In this context, concepts such as participation-based behaviour and nominalism come to mind (see Subbotsky 2010: 98–99).

\(^{364}\) This theory is, for instance, a feature of the tantric doctrine of the three kāyas, and of Buddhist philosophical doctrines such as Madhyamaka-Yogācāra or Pramāṇavāda, the epistemological school of Buddhism. In these approaches, external manifestations are not physically present as what they are perceived to be independently from mind or its nature.

\(^{365}\) See Dilgo Khyentse 1992: 136: “Comment le samsara se manifeste-t-il ? Alors que nous percevons avec nos cinq sens ce qui nous entoure, toutes sortes de sentiments d’attraction et de répulsion se forment dans notre esprit.”
the ritual, the ‘psychologization’ of demons is indisputable.366 A very interesting story—at the beginning of the Khams version of the epic—explains the origin of demons.367 The demons were born from the anger and hatred of a woman who had been abandoned by her mother, as the latter wanted to devote her life to Dharma. The daughter, who had three children and a difficult life, cursed the ascetic who inspired her mother to practice Dharma, pledging to come back with her three sons as demons to destroy Buddhadharma. This narrative is evocative of Kapstein’s account of Rudra’s myth. It also ‘psychologizes’ the concept of ‘demon’ in that it supports the idea that there is no demon apart from anger and hatred. Because the causes of the appearance of our mental projections as ‘demons’ consist in our own mental patterns, changing those should affect the very existence of what is perceived as a ‘demon’:

All rudras come from beings’ attachment to ego, or self, to be self-victorious in the material world, which is the root of all harm and must

366 Cantwell 1997: 108–109 describes the ritual of sgrol ba (liberation through ritual killing) in which the same multidimensional aspect is displayed: “Most manuals speak of dgra-bgegs ‘hostile forces and obstacles’ as the objects to be killed and liberated. Sometimes byung po (elemental forces) and other classes of negative forces are added; sometimes the object is rudra or the rudras. . . . In ritual manuals and contemporary practice, rudra is always equated with the most negative qualities—ignorance, self-grasping, the three poisons—within the practitioner’s mind. . . .” More generally, where the object to be killed and liberated is specified simply as dgra-bgegs, the symbolism has the same significance: dgra-bgegs are also equated with the three poisons. The bgegs—‘obstacles’—are distractions arising in meditation, while dgra are the ‘hostile forces’ preventing liberation. . . . The object of ‘Vajra wrath’ in ritual killing is, ‘discursive thought (which creates the process of labelling: the city of ego projections (of) subject and object’. During my fieldwork with monks in Rewalsar, similar psychological interpretations were almost exclusively emphasised. However, this explanation of dgra-bgegs as manifestations of the practitioner’s Ignorance [sic] is not adequate in accounting for sgrol-ba as a rite which can kill actual sentient beings. Although at one level, dgra-bgegs are internal psychological forces, they may simultaneously be external forces, even appearing to sentient beings. There is no rigid distinction between internal and external forces in Tibetan thinking—omens in the outer world may reflect individual problems.” In fact, according to such rituals, the outside world is always a reflection of the ‘inner world’. A secret problem (the ignorance of one’s real condition) creates inner obstacles (emotions and negative states of mind) which like seeds ripen and generate all kinds of outer problems (poverty, quarrels, diseases, etc.)

be annihilated through realization. Then, all harmful phenomena can be purified.\textsuperscript{368}

On the inner level, daemons such as \textit{dgra blas} therefore represent our positive emotions or states of mind whose power lies in their capacity to shape our so-called \textit{reality}. This is reminiscent of the way Greek gods or daemons symbolized emotions while simultaneously being as \textit{real} as humans. These daemons are logically considered more powerful than human beings. Without them, there is nothing human beings can perceive or do since, from such a perspective, reality is accepted to be the mere crystallization of these various emotions and states of mind.\textsuperscript{369} In the particular context of this Gesar ritual, negative emotions can be seen as the ‘enemies’. They are the inner demons shaping reality in a negative way. As shown repeatedly in the course of human history, the outcome of war or battles was often decided by emotions. Fear, despair, or panic are lethal enemies for warriors, and the \textit{reality} of victory or defeat is dependent on emotions.\textsuperscript{370} Negative emotions are in such circumstances as \textit{real} as physical hostile forces, albeit of a different nature. From the perspective of inner psychological forces, the ritual therefore aims at dispelling negative

\textsuperscript{368} Thinley Norbu 2006: 260.

\textsuperscript{369} Needless to say, such a view of the world goes straight against Frege’s anti-psychologism and is quite fascinating from an epistemological point of view. According to the \textit{Weltbild} upon which our ritual is based, Frege seem to conflate inter-subjectivity with objectivity. An inter-subjective experience in itself does not prove that something exists objectively exactly as inter-subjectively imagined or conceived, or that there is something truly existent on the side of the object as imagined subjectively or even inter-subjectively. In the context of our ritual and in contrast to Frege, mind, feelings, states of mind and emotions cannot be separated from logic or experience. Here, the mere subjective and somewhat naive process of objectification is not accepted as a proxy for objectivity.

\textsuperscript{370} The attitude of Leonidas at the battle of the Thermopyles or that of Alexander the Great at the battles of Issus and Gaugamela are good illustrations of this. The next step is logically the deification of these extraordinary emotions and mental forces shaping everyday reality in the most supernatural way. The historical precedent of Alexander the Great’s divinity in the sense of a sacred positive force manifesting itself on the level of outer reality as accepted by some of his oriental followers is a good illustration of the relation between warriors, emotions, gods, and reality in the context of an ancient feudal and martial society.
emotions and invoking positive ones through re-orienting or re-framing the participants’ states of mind towards that which is conducive to (1) full awakening, (2) better ‘dreams’ and ‘hallucinations’. This is achieved by recognizing one’s desires and letting go of subconscious blocks. As in most rituals, the focus of attention is shifted from the negative towards the positive, after having acknowledged negative aspects of life, as is the case in most rituals. Without minimizing the brutal aspects of existence, wholesome qualities are celebrated throughout these practices. In the context of these practices, the positive attitudes characteristic of Gesar, the four inner dgra blas invoked by the ritual, are confidence, humorous joy, bravery, and congruence. They are respectively symbolized on rlung rta flags by animals representing the clans related to Gesar, tiger, snow lion, garuḍa, and dragon. These four animals symbolize the four elements on the basis of which the entire outer reality manifests.

6.2.2 Invoking the inner dgra bla as a mental attitude

On the inner level of the ritual, ordinary reality consists in the experience of being locked in a net of habits because one is ‘stuck’ on certain emotional patterns. The outer crystallisation of a negative set of emotions is the product of some conditioning mental states functioning in the way of a computer bug or a loop in a computer program. Within the various methods of ‘liberation’ applied in Tibetan Buddhism, there are two main ways to dismantle the belief in the reality of these fictions. The first one (e.g. Madhyamaka) relies on critical thinking and

---

371 Chogyam Trungpa calls these four attitudes the ‘four dignities’: “The four dignities are meek, perky, outrageous, and inscrutable… Meekness is basically experiencing a humble and gentle state of being, while perkiness is connected with uplifted and youthful energy. Outrageousness is being daring and entering into situations without hope and fear, and inscrutability is the experience of fulfillment and uncontrived, spontaneous achievement.” (Trungpa 1984: 161).
logic. The second one (e.g. Vajrayāna) by-passes critical thinking and logic altogether and uses the trance itself to disentrance. The first approach consciously dismantles fictions in an intellectual way, whereas the second works in a more subconscious manner through symbols and emotions. This explains why tantric practices do not follow an intellectual approach. In fact, it is often stressed in this context that being too intellectual can even be an obstacle. Rituals such as the SDG gather people from all walks of life, laity as well as practitioners. Lay participants may be people possessing neither experience of meditation nor familiarity with the subtleties of Buddhist philosophy. In this typical Vajrayāna context, these practices are presented as shortcuts leading the practitioners to the ultimate accomplishment more rapidly than analytical approaches do. From this perspective, the ritual is implemented in order to induce some direct effects on the participants’ mind. This is necessary, as we have seen, on account of the role played by mind on the perception of and clinging to ‘reality’. Yet, it would not be fair to reduce these practices to this single aspect. Tenzin Namgyal explains this very clearly with regard to similar Bon rituals:

We may interpret the shamanic practices as only symbols used to manipulate mechanical psychological processes. But when we really need help, we don’t turn to what we believe is only psychological; this is because it seems smaller than we are in our totality. In a sacred relationship—with the elements, the deities, the master, the holy
texts—we turn to something sacred, of greater value and meaning than our depression or anxiety or self-hatred or disappointment.\footnote{Tenzin Wangyal: 2002: 7.}

Two essential things are mentioned here:

- The ritual does use psychological ‘triggers’ to obtain predictable responses to psychological stimuli. This does not imply that the ritual is a mere manipulation of mind, or ‘sleight of mind’ as it is based on a very sophisticated rational philosophical view.

- In the tantric context of the inner level of the ritual, the ritual relies on an approach to the sacred that is not disconnected from one’s own nature. Mind and its manifestations are never cut off from their pure nature. As mentioned earlier, the ritual constantly plays on these three intertwined levels of reality: the manifestation happening in mind, mind as a continuum of fleeting emotions and feelings, and the ultimate nature of mind. In this vision of the world, the psychological forces operating in the ritual are thus sacred manifestations of the pure nature of things which are not separable from the pure nature of one’s mind, expressed as the ultimate guru and the chosen deity. The ritual cannot therefore be reduced to a psychotherapeutic act because it relates to something sacred, something of much greater value than mere emotions, which gives it, according to Tenzin Namgyal, its particular efficiency in times of crisis.

On the inner level, Gesar’s awakened actions take place in the ‘space’ of confused mind. The poison of emotions becomes the very antidote against the intoxication they induce. Mind is confused or blocked because of inner obstacles and fixations. Habits, in the form of repeated patterns of disturbing emotions
(anger, infatuation, envy, etc.), take place involuntarily in reaction to external stimuli. These emotions act as forces that bring about ‘reality’ and our belief in its actual existence. When these inner unbalanced forces, the emotions, occur repeatedly and become habits to the point of shaping one’s karmic vision, they may cross a critical threshold beyond which they start manifesting in the outer reality, as if they had crystallized externally. For instance, extreme and widespread paranoia can be reflected outwardly as general aggression on the scale of an entire country. In such extreme cases where negative emotions such as hatred, paranoia, fear, etc. are widely shared, negative aspects of ordinary reality such as poverty, wars, etc. appear as the reflections of these inner disturbances and obstacles. Mayhem, madness, and chaos on a grand scale, as is the case at the beginning of the Gesar epic, ensue from extreme collective emotions and the resulting collective karmic vision. The outer reality of the most material things such as food—or the lack thereof—is, according to the view upon which the Gesar rituals are based, literally shaped by inner forces of emotions. As an answer to such issues, the ritual uses mind and emotions to dismantle this very mind, a feature of the higher tantras. The inner level is accordingly highly symbolic since it does not deal with the outer form of things in the way they ordinarily manifest. In this approach, the outer elements are the reflection of the internal elements, and the elements themselves are symbols standing for some important aspects of matter and mental events alike. For instance, although various tantric systems exist, the quality of water—as a symbol—is generally understood as a cohesive force which, ‘holding things together’, enables fluidity and comfort while the

---

373 In the various Buddhist Abhidharmas, the elements symbolize specific characteristics such as cohesion in the case of water.
emotion resulting from a lack of this property is anger or aversion. The quality of fire is described as creativity and dispersion in the sense of a leveraging force projecting and scattering itself outwardly. The related emotion is attraction or desire. The quality of air is the force of momentum. Its corresponding negative emotion is the acute sensation that something others have is lacking in oneself. The quality of earth is the force of inertia, its related emotion being a feeling of self-satisfaction or self-centredness. The quality of space is by default an accommodating force, spaciousness, unimpeded by anything as it is in fact an absence of the four other elements, and simultaneously, that which encompasses everything. Its related emotion is mental dullness, the state of being mentally stuck on, blocked by, or fixated upon something. It is clear that these elements must be ideally balanced. A certain amount of inertia means stability and solidity; too much of the corresponding earth element may generate sluggishness or dullness. Spaciousness, if excessive, can result in being ‘spaced out’. In Vajrayāna, materiality as well as states of mind are related to these elements which stand as symbols for forces of momentum, leverage, inertia, and cohesion within space. Ultimately, these forces are recognized in a sacred perspective as deities symbolizing the union of whatever manifests with the primordial purity of the nature of mind. In the context of Gesar rituals, balancing these elements on the inner level is a method to pacify negative emotions and develop the positive ones, particularly, those conducive to the realization of primordial knowing (ye shes). ‘Impure vision’ can thus be gradually refined into pure sacred vision or—if one can achieve it—suddenly disappear as the primordial purity of ordinary appearances (forms, emotions, etc.) is directly recognized. Numerous means such
as physical postures, breathing, visualizations, recitation of mantras are used by higher *tantras* to get ‘there’. Some of these methods have been integrated by Mipham into Gesar rituals and have thereby taken on a distinctive ‘Gesar flavor’.

As we have seen above, the mechanical character of our emotional responses to external stimuli is used as fuel to refine the emotions into their quintessential nature. In the Gesar rituals, this is achieved by developing the following positive attitudes, each of them corresponding to a particular element and emotion: 374

(1) Bravery (associated with fire—attraction)

Desire, attraction, or infatuation, is related to the fire element which, in terms of its essential property, represents a leveraging force, continuously projecting itself outward, away from its starting standpoint, just like a prairie fire does. Attraction is the emotion which elicits enthusiasm, inspiration, and change. Transformation is made possible by the fact that, as in any seduction process, one is compelled to relinquish any status quo in order to create rapport and find a common ground. This element, when balanced, is therefore strongly associated with creativity, mystery, and what has come to be called ‘fun’ in everyday language. When the fire element is lacking, it manifests as depression. When it is present in excess, it generates infatuation, neediness, a feeling of thirst. Bravery, as a warrior quality,

---

374 Chogyam Trungpa associates these four qualities with the four animals. For an extensive description of the ‘four dignities’, see Trungpa 1984: 159–172. It is worth noting that these four states of mind taken together denote the state of ‘flow’ described and studied by psychologists like Mihály Csíkszentmihályi. Regarding the correspondence between animals, emotions, and elements, various interpretations exist, reflecting the syncretic nature of the *rlung rta* practice (see Beer 2000: 62b, Cornu 2006: 132b) as well as the different systems of correspondence found in various *tantras*. The problem is here further compounded by the fact that, although the practice is pre-Buddhist, some animals appear to be of Chinese origin, and, as a consequence, have a different symbolism. For instance, the Chinese tiger and dragon are in opposition, in contradistinction to the Indian mythology where the nāgas and the garudās are considered to be arch-enemies. In addition, the geomantic disposition of the animals in the four directions as it is sometimes found should not be conflated with their symbolism. The dragon is thus sometimes associated with the south, but, in this particular case it seems to symbolize the presence of water in the earth element (see Beer 2000: 62b).
means courage, perseverance, and resilience in the sense of being beyond hope and fear, open to new situations within the wide open space empty of reference points. As a preparation for the invocation of the secret dgra bla, bravery is necessary in order to step out of one’s comfort zone and habit patterns in spite of one’s fear of losing one’s identity in the process.

(2) Humorous joy (associated with earth and self-centeredness)

The earth element corresponds to the emotion of self-satisfaction, self-esteem, or self-centeredness. This element represents the force of inertia. When in excess, this emotion morphs into arrogance, fixation, egotism, or stinginess since mind is exclusively focussed on one’s own self. When it is lacking, there is a need for grounding which takes the form of material and psychological insecurity. When it is balanced, it manifests as stability and solidity, establishing a solid basis, or ground, which, when mind is awakened, is not dependent on fluctuating circumstances. In the context of Gesar practices, this force appears as humorous joy. Laughter plays an important role in the epic and in the rituals alike. Taking illusory manifestations seriously means being completely entranced by whatever manifests. Humour prevents the Gesar practitioner from taking circumstances too seriously as something solid, permanent, and substantial. It also opens the door to qualities such as tenderness, loving-kindness, and goodness that do not depend on circumstances and should not be subject to doubt. In this approach, unwavering enthusiasm resulting from appreciation and abundance denotes a complete absence of insecurity and poverty. As a preparation for the invocation of the secret dgra bla, humorous joy releases the knots of dualistic vision without falling into the traps of frivolous egotism or mental dullness. Considering that one precisely
sees what is happening without being engrossed by the situation, having a humorous and joyful mind means that mind is neither fixated nor scattered.

(3) Congruence (associated with water and repulsion)
The water element stands for the cohesive force keeping ‘things together’ and enabling fluidity or flexibility. Something undesirable generates discomfort and anger, or any emotion associated with aversion and aggression on account of a lack of mental (or physical) flexibility. When this cohesive force is balanced, it manifests as fluidity, cohesion, and comfort. This flexibility enables acceptance and thereby pacifies obstacles. When it is unbalanced, there is a lack of flexibility resulting in irritation, anger, and a general lack of comfort. Alternatively, an excess of flexibility results in accepting things which should be rejected. Cohesion, fluidity, and flexibility, lead to acceptance and comfort. In the context of Gesar practices, this force manifests as congruence, or harmony, the expression of authenticity, genuineness, and wholesomeness as evidenced by a complete absence of struggle and calculation, an important feature within the phu nu and the Gesar warriors themselves. As a preparation for the invocation of the secret dgra bla, the force of congruence contributes to the release of sheer spontaneity beyond confirmation.

(4) Confidence (associated with air and envy)
The air element symbolizes the force of momentum. The emotion associated with this force is envy in the sense of an acute sensation that something others have is needed. When this force is lacking, there is deficiency of movement, or possibility for transformation, which might give rise to a feeling of being stuck or caught in
situations. When it is present in excess, there is a constant dissatisfaction, lack of contentment, which tends to generate physical and emotional instability. When it is balanced, there is momentum—but no restless agitation—and transforming oneself as well as situations is effortless. In the context of the Gesar practices, this liberating movement free from agitation or anxiety is known as the warrior’s confidence. It arises from a lack of expectations in terms of result or outcome, which also represents an important attitude with regard to the invocation of the secret dgra bla.

6.2.3 The magic of suggestion in Gesar rituals

The purpose of the ritual is to harmonize the unbalanced inner elements and eliminate negative mental states so that so-called relative or conventional reality can be transformed. From the perspective of this tradition, the aim of all such practices is—ultimately—to dismantle all mental habits and fixations, the obstacles to awakening from everyday trances. The characteristic approach of the Gesar practices on this level is, however, that trance phenomena are used within the trance of illusory reality itself to model and eventually weaken it. The Gesar practices pre-suppose that mind is plastic. Since whatever manifests ‘outside’ is a reflection of what is ‘inside’, limitations are somehow self-imposed, most of the time in a subconscious manner. As a consequence, the limitation of the focus of attention typical of waking trance phenomena can be shifted and used as a resource by means of an isomorphic metaphor: illusory ‘hypnotic’ monsters symbolizing negative emotions are destroyed by illusory ‘hypnotic’ knights symbolizing positive emotions. This shift is possible because the moment of
power is the very nowness of the present moment: it is impossible to have more than one thought at any given time. The ritual is therefore used, from a shamanic perspective, as a tool to subconsciously melt and recast the elements, which are to emotional patterns what ice is to water. In the same way that the appearance of demons triggers the very appearance of Gesar, the manifestation of negative emotions triggers the manifestation of positive emotions. Once this pattern has been established, the more obstacles one encounters, the more one experiences the presence of Gesar. This connection is carried out by means of sacred symbols embodying the inner forces (inertia, leverage, momentum, cohesion), namely, Gesar and the four symbolic animals, (dragon, tiger, snow lion, garuda) that represent the four specific attitudes leading to victory over negativity (congruence, confidence, humorous joy, and bravery). These emotions are the alchemical catalysts used to design, reframe and re-imprint beliefs, values, goals, attitudes, projections, intentions, behaviors, and habits. Identity as self-image is transformed. This process is carried out by way of direct suggestions (e.g. repeated affirmations, embedded commands in the form of imperatives coupled with syntactic vagueness regarding the subject, which induces a lack of reference point which would enable identification), or indirect suggestions (e.g. visualizations involving synaesthesia, metaphors inducing transderivational search, references to the epic and primordial myths prompting modelling). These suggestions are actualized by mimesis (in the sense of subconscious imitation) in direct association with the above-mentioned powerful emotions. Direct suggestions consist in repetitive and specific affirmative or imperative sentences in which imagination and mental imagery play an important role. The efficiency
of language in such rituals hinges on the power of the emotions it generates. Poetic language is not based on reasoning or logic but on emotions. As a consequence, the transformative power of the ritual lies in the richness of the visualizations it triggers, their details, their brightness, their size, and the quality of their visual definition and rendering. On this level, the ritual speech consists in providing a life script conducive to awakening by activating in the mind of the Gesar practitioners a feeling of adhesion to and identification with a sacred positive ‘mindforce’ that is ultimately not different from their own mind and its pure nature. This can, however, only happen if devotion is strong enough. Devotion, a profound dedication to awakening, is the glue holding the various aspects of the tantric ritual together. Without it, the ritual is meaningless. But having identified themselves with this invincible positive force represented by Gesar and his retinue, practitioners who have devotion are subsequently in a position to emulate Gesar in their daily lives, which, in a practical way, enables the application of this life-script as a long-term endeavor. The ritual or practice, performed on a regular basis, is an important means to re-structure and organize time and space around a sacred axis. Cultural, social, and familial mimesis plays a crucial role in defining habits and giving a direction to mind, usually in a subconscious way. The negative—with regard to awakening—subconscious conditioning patterns among these are by-passed by means of the practice itself in

375 Some associations, anchoring techniques, and textual patterning found in the text aim at creating spontaneous resurgences of important aspects of the ritual in daily life, i.e. the evocation of the six elements, the celestial bodies, etc. The ritual is a seed which ideally is expected to sprout beyond the confines of the actual ceremony. As for textual patterning, space and time are important factors structuring the world in order to make sense of its apparent chaos. The ritual as a sequence organizes a series of actions directed at accomplishing a precise goal. For example, every important part of the ritual proceeds on the basis of spiritual authority which is invoked first. This grounding effect is, however, not limited to the performance of the ritual itself but is also ideally found in the daily activity of Gesar’s practitioners.
conjunction with devotion. In fact, subconscious beliefs and habits are part of the context. When the context changes, their effect is affected in proportion to the practitioner’s devotion for and identification with Gesar. Sincerity is indeed an important condition for the success of the ritual: the more inspiration the ritual engenders and the more uplifting it is, the more efficient the process of transformation becomes.376 In a way, one could claim that the past, present, and future of the practitioner are meant to be replaced by a sacred timeless history, that of Gesar. Hence, during the practice and beyond, Gesar practitioners are not ordinary persons anymore, with ordinary issues in an ordinary environment. As they invoke Gesar and re-enact his ‘journey back home’ by means of the ritual, they become hic et nunc part and parcel of Gesar’s retinue of knights, and thus become themselves the support—the embodiment—of the dgra blas.377 The objective of this new ‘Gesar script’ is to structure the scattered fragments of human experience, mind’s confusions, by providing a new vision of consensus reality. On the outer level of reality, words and things are separate entities. On the inner level, words do not stand for real things. There is no real thing hiding behind concepts ‘out there’. If one analyzes any thing, one finds nothing that is itself independent from concepts. All our percepts and concepts are dependent on mind to appear as what they are supposed to be. In fact, all we have are mental events or thoughts that can be verbalized by means of language. Having power over one’s inner world of representations and emotions therefore means having power over

376 Many technical aspects of the meditative practices related to the ritual on the inner level proceed from inspiration. Inspiration is itself a support for concentration (in that it gathers scattered thoughts) and for creative imagination, hence the importance of poetical forms such as figurative speech (SDG 21.33–37,71,83,84) in the text of the ritual.

377 The Bodhisattva path also uses plenty of similar martial symbols: i.e. ‘the armor of patience’ (bzod pa’i go), ‘the sword of insight’ (shes rab ral gri).
the outer reality. The outer world is thus considered as something purely symbolic revealing one’s inner world. What one gets ‘outwardly’ corresponds to one’s emotions ‘inwardly’. This fundamental aspect of the ritual is connected with the role played by figurative speech in the Gesar rituals. Ritual speech is metaphoric by nature because literal language belongs to the outer level of reality. From the perspective of the inner level, all forms of language are metaphorical. Hence the importance of poetic language in ritual speech, as Dargyay explains,

During my stay in Zanskar I gained the impression that Gesar was still alive in the hearts of his people, that in the howling of the storm, in the thunder of the avalanches they perceive him galloping to new feats.378

Linguistic anthropology provides a theoretical framework to understand how ritual speech generates such a transformation through the linguistic techniques of contextualization and entextualization.379 Gaenszle 2007: 176 defines contextualization in the following way:

Generally it refers to those aspects of a ritual performance by virtue of which it is grounded, embedded or ‘anchored’ in the situational context. The term first came into usage in linguistic anthropology in the sense of a ‘discourse strategy’ by which speakers signal their understanding of the speech situation.

378 Dargyay 1988: 89.
379 I shall follow Gaenszle 2007’s ethno-linguistic approach as expressed in his extensive study of ritual texts among the Mewahang Rai of East Nepal for my analysis of ritual speech in the Gesar rituals. The text that is examined in this section is the SDG.
While contextualization is “the linking of the text with context” (Gaenszle: 2007: 183), entextualization corresponds to “the detachment of text from context” (ibid.):

This process, also described as ‘decontextualization’, may be seen as a strategy to shift the focus of attention away from the immediate context of the situation towards the discursive universe which is constituted by the patterned strings of words as such.380

In Gesar rituals, contextualization is mainly used to create rapport, to relate to people, their lives and world based on their experience of reality and therefore (karmic) vision.381 Building up rapport helps them feel involved and keeps them focused as the ritual proceeds. The outer level plays a key role in this. Gaenszle 2007: 175 describes this process:

By situating the speech events in terms of time, space, and person, the performance is contextualized and authenticated as an interaction between concrete persons. In this way, a communicative link is established between speaker and hearer which helps the former to

381 Gesar is so popular that his name alone is enough to link the ritual’s text with its context. There is for instance no introductory panegyric of Gesar in the twelve sections of this ritual. Hermanns 1965: 366 concurs: “In den Heldenepen aller Völker liegt ein gemeinsames Grundschema vor, das aus den Elementargedanken der Völkerpsychologie hervorging. Der Inhalt umfaßt Menschen—und Völker—erregende Ereignisse, die aus dem Umkreis der Stämme oder einer Volksgruppe genommen und durch Weiterüberlieferung in der Erinnerung festgehalten wurden. Sie entstanden in recht wirren Zeiten, in denen Bestand oder Untergang der Leute auf dem Spiele stand, so daß gewaltige Erschütterungen die Volksseele aufwühlten. Durch diese Erlebnisse reifte das Volk zu seinem Heldentum heran und trat in sein Heroin-Zeitalter. Der große, rettende Held aus dieser furchtbaren Not wurde der hervorragende und hochbegabte Führer und Vertrauter seines Stammes oder Volkes, der für seine Leute wunderbare Taten vollbrachte, aussichtslose Aufgaben glänzend erfüllte und ein hoffnungsloses Schicksal mit fester Hand zum Frieden und Glück wandte.” This explains clearly why Gesar is considered by the Tibetans as one of their ancestors. This is a very strong argument in favour of our presentation of Gesar’s nature on the inner level (or mind’s plane) of the ritual as the symbol of transformation of negative mental states into positive ones.
persuade the latter, through words as well as the presentation of offerings, to be compliant and fulfil the request.

In the case of Gesar rituals, the ‘hearer’ on the inner level is not different from the participants’ minds. As a consequence, it appears that the ritual itself possesses in-built psychological triggers aimed at deeply re-writing the practitioners’ life-script. Entextualization, in contrast, is necessary to extract them from the context of their ordinary lives, world, and problems (sickness, poverty, etc.) which are, in the Buddhist perception of things, merely manifestations of their own karmic vision. Entextualization acts essentially as a subliminal de-linking or decentering process. It opens the door to the inner and secret levels. It is the part of ritual speech in charge of actively melting and recasting negative states of mind into sacred and positive perspectives which will re-script ordinary reality. Gesar rituals use various techniques of entextualization, such as figurative speech and various other stylistic devices. One of the most powerful linguistic patterns used consists in serialization, the enumeration of names found at important junctions of the rite—see, for instance, §4 of the SDG for the invocation of the deities and §9 for the offering of the purification. Standard formulae (e.g. Buddhist terminology SDG 6–8,22,48,52–58) and repetitions (e.g. bsangs which is chanted 26 times in a row or rgyal lo which is repeated 8 times in a row in the SDG) abound throughout the text. Entextualization selectively ‘re-cycles’ some contextual materials (images, aspects, etc.) but only inasmuch as these representations contribute to the ritual’s ‘decentering’ strategy and lead to the opening of a distinct discursive universe. Arms and armor are, for instance, used here as support for figurative speech in the form of metaphors, whereas other
well-known events of the epic which are not necessary for the shift generated by entextualization are not mentioned at all.

As this subliminal inner process of disentrancement is performed\textsuperscript{382} through ritual speech, positive states of mind, or \textit{dgra blas}, are invoked by means of sophisticated emotion-triggers such as those studied in the context of social psychology by Cialdini in his seminal study about the principles of influence, in particular, self-interest, reciprocation, commitment and consistency, social proof, liking, authority, and psychological reactance.\textsuperscript{383} In the context of Gesar practices, the shaping influence of mind on our reality--as a demiurge--cannot be disconnected from social dynamics. Cialdini extensively analyzed how basic principles of social psychology impact human behavior in a Pavlovian way:

> In fact, automatic, stereotyped behavior is prevalent in much of human action, because in many cases it is the most efficient form of behaving, and in other cases it is simply necessary. . . . We must very often use our stereotypes, our rules of thumb to classify things according to a few key features and then to respond mindlessly when one or another of these trigger features is present.\textsuperscript{384}

In the present context, ritual speech clinically employs these principles which are combined so that they constantly strengthen one another. The criss-cross of these interlaced principles is of a systemic nature: there is a constant interplay between them throughout the text, their basic objective being to

\textsuperscript{382} Ritual speech is 'performed' and therefore includes numerous paralinguistic elements which are beyond the reach of an exclusively philological analysis. Although Gesar rituals were put in writing, they cannot be reduced to this single aspect. These rituals are not simply read but 'performed' or, to use a more Buddhist expression, practiced.

\textsuperscript{383} See Cialdini 1993.

\textsuperscript{384} Cialdini 1993: 6–7.
accomplish the transformation from an undesirable state to a better one, relatively and ultimately.\textsuperscript{385}

**Liking**

Cialdini 1993: 167 defines this principle in the following way:

Few people would be surprised to learn that, as a rule, we most prefer to say yes to the requests of someone we know and like.

As explained by Cialdini, there are a few techniques to generate liking: physical attractiveness, similarity, compliments, familiarity, cooperation, and association with things we like. These techniques are used throughout this Gesar ritual:

- Contextualization plays an important role here since Gesar is an extremely popular and familiar national hero for Tibetans and, more generally, for whoever practises Tibetan Buddhism. He is not an alien or unknown deity of some kind. The mere utterance of his name suffices to evoke the background of the ritual.

- Gesar as the embodiment of invincibility and indomitable power possesses all the ritual insignia associated in the epic (\textit{sgrung}) with victory, such as his weapons. Arms and armor are mentioned several times at important junctions of the ritual: blade (SDG 73), bow (SDG 82), armor (SDG 33–35, 72). The minds of the practitioners, their specific features, and the general context, play a key role in explaining why such methods are used. The ritual in this case corresponds to the practitioners’ models and representations of the world. As stated in Dzongsar Khyentse 2007: 74, “He [Buddha] provided many paths and methods for discovering the truth. In fact there are tens of thousands of paths to follow within Buddhism. So why not simplify it into one method? The reason is that, like the variety of medicines needed for different diseases, a variety of methods is necessary for different kinds of habits, cultures, and attitudes. Whichever one is followed depends on the state of mind of the student and the skill with which the teacher is adorned.”
rhetorical strategy based on martial imagery and symbolism is developed consistently from the beginning to the end of the ritual. For instance, the word *rgyal* (‘victory’) as in *rgyal po* (mentioned seven times) and other lexemes is repeated throughout the text: *rgyal srid sna bdun* SDG 20, *rgyal kha ’dzin pa* SDG 70, *rgyal lo* SDG 80–84 and three times in SDG 85 alone, *rgyal* SDG 86, *rgyal srid* SDG 98. In fact *rgyal lo* is chanted on the basis of a parallelistic syntactic construction (SDG 80–85). The homological grammatical structure of these lines does not have any particular referential purpose but definitely has the function of quasi-hypnotic persuasion as it repeatedly emphasizes the association between Gesar and lofty desirable qualities. Prosodic stylistic devices such as these parallelistic constructions decisively contribute to the ‘de-centering effect’ of the ritual since (1) they emphasize important features of Gesar (cf. the synoeciosis SDG 66–67, the epistrophe SDG 75–78); (2) they insist on the fact that an important action has been or is accomplished (cf. the epistrophe SDG 52–78, the isocolons SDG 80–81, 82–84, the diazeugma SDG 80–82, the asyndeton SDG 80–85, the anadiplosis SDG 84–85, the epizeuxis SDG 85); (3) they show that a particularly important action is requested (cf. the epistrophe SDG 39–41 in conjunction with the imperative mode). Rhetoric figures of repetition, apart from being useful mnemonic devices or having a petitionary character, structure the most important passages of the ritual, such as those which are not standard enumerations of objects of worship or offerings. The study of these parallelisms shows that the heart of the ritual, where entextualization reaches its peak, is situated within SDG 62–95 and corresponds to the purification and wrathful suppression of the negativities.
themselves. The epistrophe is the most common of all the rhetoric figures of speech found in our text (SDG 39–41,52–78, 75–78). This is due to the particular syntax of the Tibetan language. Every repetition of a particular verb results into an epistrophe, the effect of which is compounded by the brevity of the meter of the septi-syllabic verses. Worth mentioning is also an important rhetoric figure of amplification, a climax (SDG 87–92), in which Gesar’s wrathful activity proceeds in a crescendo from outer up to secret obstacles. The sequence starts with the exorcism of evil beings and their actions, proceeds to the elimination of the practitioners’ negative emotions, obscurations and negativities, and culminates in the definitive suppression of the four demons and all the obstacles to the spiritual path. Apart from figures of repetition based on words, clauses, and phrases, there is only one alliteration in the text (cf. SDG 86).

• In a poetic passage of amplified creative imagination (SDG 33–37) where celestial bodies in the firmament represent his armor, shield, and helmet, Gesar is depicted in a very enticing way. Everything is staged, as we have already seen with the elements, to make him appear ‘bigger than life’. The outer elements symbolize this to perfection in the SDG: space (SDG 14,110) is all-pervasive; water comes in the form of an ocean (SDG 21,112); earth is represented as majestic mountains (SDG 71,83,84,98,109); fire is associated with primordial knowing (ye shes SDG 48); wind is represented by the supernatural speed of Gesar’s horse (SDG 36–37,74). Poetical forms, metaphors, and hyperboles abound in the ritual (e.g. the sun is his helmet, his horse is as fast as a lightning bolt, ambrosia is like an ocean, etc.). At the same
time, since figurative speech opens the door to symbolism, Gesar’s nature remains mysterious and it is unclear whether one deals here with metaphors or metonymies (cf. SDG 33–37). This very uncertainty acts as a powerful teaser and enables shifts between the various levels of the ritual.

- Unlike many worldly deities, Gesar’s life as a human being (e.g. the weak Joru rejecting and rejected by abusive authorities) constitutes an important part of his identity, making him quite similar to the practitioners of this ritual. His repeated identification with the deities of the mountain moreover affirms the fact that he is an ancestor of the clan, which in this context also includes those sharing samayas with Gesar or being inspired by him.

- A contrast effect is achieved by the use of epideictic rhetoric. What is described negatively (epidemics, poverty, demons, etc.) makes what is good, in particular, Gesar, even better. Although there is no eulogy of Gesar as such, praise and blame are implicit throughout the text.

- Moreover, Gesar is repeatedly presented as a very special being so that the mere possibility of being part of his clan is extremely flattering—a form of compliment, the ritual’s participants being deemed ‘good’ enough to be members of his inner circle (phu nu), a group of people interacting in a positive way.

- In the epic, Gesar is said to have been sent among human beings in order to eradicate obstacles and protect them. Given the context as well as the objective of the ritual, the notion of reciprocation upon which the efficiency of
the ritual hinges is at the origin of the cooperation between Gesar and the ritual’s participants. This cooperation is also a factor strengthening liking, as shown by Cialdini.

In short, all the principles described by Cialdini to generate ‘liking’ are found in the ritual. This process makes the identification of the participants with Gesar possible. The dual nature of Gesar makes it even easier: Gesar is somewhat similar to us—not something alien, he is ‘accessible’, yet the qualities he embodies are desirable precisely because they are also extraordinary and beyond us. Gesar is both similar, meaning that communication is possible, and different, meaning that he has something extraordinary to communicate. A new script is shaped by the power of Gesar’s attractive presentation and by the very fact that identification is possible.

**Authority**

As Milgram’s famous experiment made it clear, the power of authority can have incredible consequences for our behaviour. Cialdini explains that the power of authority as a motivator is not necessarily unreasonable, in the sense that, as with other principles, there is a certain efficiency in automatically accepting authority as the basis of social organization.

We are trained from birth [to accept] that obedience to proper authority is right and disobedience is wrong.\(^{386}\)

In the ritual, spiritual authority plays a major role. Some lamas are known for their spiritual realization which, in the context of a ritual performance must be

\(^{386}\) Cialdini: 1993: 216.
taken into account. In the text of the ritual, the spiritual authority of the lineage holds a prominent place. In fact, without the lineage’s support which is invoked twice in SDG 6–9,52–57, the purity of samayas which is mentioned in SDG 17, and the empowering blessings of the three roots (cf. SDG 5), there is no basis for performing a tantric ritual. The three roots—the guru (SDG 2,6,22,52), the _iṣṭadevatā_ (SDG 6,22,53), and the _dharmapālas_ (SDG 6,22,56–57)—are mentioned at the beginning of each main phase of the ritual: during the invocation, the presentation of the offerings, and during the purification itself. Although Gesar’s authority is contextual, it is repeatedly emphasized because his protection is requested. Authority symbols, described by Cialdini in detail, are also used throughout the text: (a) titles (‘king’ _rgyal po_ SDG 10,23,43,58,62,64,65,86; (b) various honorific expressions in SDG 64–79); (c) appearance (cf. SDG 33–36); (d) symbols of power (e.g. Gesar’s retinue cf. SDG 11–13,23–24,63, Gesar’s entrustment of the ritual’s officiant cf. SDG 26–28). The notion that one has been appointed by a superior authority to perform certain activities and that, in consequence, one should not slack is very important for practitioners (SDG 28) as well as for the invoked deity, Gesar (SDG 80,96) since this samaya, or oath, is ‘spiritually binding’.

**Commitment**

[Commitment] is, quite simply, our nearly obsessive desire to be (and to appear) consistent with what we have already done. Once we have made a choice or taken a stand, we will encounter personal and interpersonal pressures to behave consistently with that commitment.
Those pressures will cause us to respond in ways that justify our earlier decision.\textsuperscript{387}

Participation in the ritual is, in itself, both a commitment and a personal choice. There are no obligations or pressures to participate in a Gesar ritual in the Tibetan context. As Cialdini makes it clear, commitment is even stronger if it corresponds to a personal choice which is not bought by bribes or imposed by external pressures (e.g. SDG 3–4). For those who are initiated in the inner and secret levels of the ritual and have therefore received tantric teachings, it must be noted that the greater the effort invested to make a commitment (e.g. Milarepa’s ordeal), the stronger its influence upon the person who made it. In some ceremonies, the importance of the effort relative to the commitment is reflected in the offerings. There is no specified quantity or quality regarding the offerings since they depend on the generosity of the giver. An apple can be a lot to give for a beggar while, for a wealthy person, a truckload of offerings might be nothing. The highest possible tantric commitment—\textit{samaya} and various forms of entrustment—are a recurrent theme in the ritual (SDG 17,27,80,96). Cialdini 1993: 92 explains that

\textit{. . . Commitments are most effective in changing a person’s self-image and future behavior when they are active, public, and effortful.}

We have seen that the ritual in public performance can integrate the notion of effort, but what about the commitment being active? The active engagement of the participants in the ritual is a particularity of the ceremonies connected with Gesar. When the ritual is performed, the public would join the officiant and

\textsuperscript{387} Cialdini: 1993: 57.
joyfully yell “ki ki bswa bswa la rgyal lo”! This war cry has a very important function since one actively, freely, and publicly acknowledges that one is part of Gesar’s clan and shares his values. Indeed, such paralinguistic patterns typical of Gesar’s rituals not only have the function of anchoring the new perspective opened up by ritual speech but they also contribute to putting the participants in a situation where they, together as a group, are able to overcome the inhibitions which are to be destroyed. This war cry can be seen as a declaration of war on the forces of depression, negative states of mind, and emotions, and also as a way to rally the uplifting energy of friendship and bravery in the face of adversity. This phrase, this war cry, is an affirmation of one’s will to overcome any obstacles. At this stage, the identification with Gesar reaches a peak: in a symbolic replay of the epic on the inner level, Gesar’s power toppling the darkest forces of the participants’ own minds to bring stability to the kingdom, namely, the mind (SDG 98).

**Reciprocity**

The rule [of reciprocity] says that we should repay, in kind, what another person has provided us.388

The whole ritual is based on this principle. As we have seen above, the protective deities are propitiated and in return their help is summoned. They have taken, they must give. The ritual anchors this culturally accepted basic principle through stressing the importance of cooperation based on mutual obligations and by combining this approach with liking. The message is that you basically get

---

what you give: goodness in, goodness out. By creating the conditions for trust through reinforcing mutual cooperation as a basic social principle on the basis of the ritual performance itself as well as the participants’ common objectives, the experience of being accepted by others leads to self-esteem, which, in turn, helps one accept others even more. A snowballing effect is what is aimed at here. The contractual aspect of the oaths, backed by sacred pledges bigger than mere promises made in a secular context, and placed under the protection of the highest possible form of authority, provides the security necessary for opening up to the transformation process. As one is part of a network or social group based on these principles, one’s mind naturally reciprocates and opens up. On the inner level, the ritual’s in-built practices such as bodhicitta as well as the dedication of merit also have this effect.

Social proof

It [the principle of social proof] states that one means we use to determine what is correct is to find out what other people think is correct. The principle applies especially to the way we decide what constitutes correct behavior. We view a behavior as more correct in a given situation to the degree that we see others performing it.389

This principle is a cornerstone of the ritual. The notion of ‘clan’, as the basic social unit of Tibetan society, is employed to provide some sense of emotional security based on ancestral social rules. The mountain deity cult which is the foundation of Tibetan social identity offers its protective function to the ritual.

participants; together they can reduce uncertainty and insecurity by identifying themselves with Gesar and his clan. There is, however, a twist to this. As we have seen above, the secular notion of ‘clan’ is replaced by a community based on the sacred *samayas*. The Gesar ritual in its entirety replaces an existing secular view of the world with a new sacred perspective dedicated to awakening. The clan, which can also be a tool of exclusion by being closed to external elements, becomes a means of integration through the principle of *samaya*. Oaths, in this case, are not based on origins or family lines but on Mahāyāna concepts such as Buddha nature or *bodhicitta*. In the epic, pledges make possible the integration of foreign tribes into Gesar’s confederation of clans. This identification with Gesar, noticeable in the paralinguistic elements of the ritual, is of paramount importance here. We have already seen the function of the war cry; the offering of *bsang* itself is a replay of what Gesar does in the epic—it is offered in a personally meaningful social context. The participants find themselves in a situation where they themselves reproduce Gesar’s actions such as performing *bsang*. This replay is established on the basis of the socially accepted principle of ancestral authority but now, as we mentioned earlier, it is accompanied by a full-fledged redefinition of the very concept of ‘authority’. The social setting and the performance of the ritual lead to emulation of Gesar—in the sense of being brave and unshakable when facing adversity.

---

Scarcity and psychological reactance

When our freedom to have something is limited, the item becomes less available, and we experience an increased desire for it. However, we rarely recognize that psychological reactance has caused us to want the item more; all we know is that we want it. Still, we need to make sense of our desire for the item, so we begin to assign it positive qualities to justify the desire. . . . Not only do we want the same item more when it is scarce, we want it most when we are in competition for it.\(^{391}\)

In the rituals, Gesar is the symbolic representation of our reaction to any event resulting in a restriction of our control over our lives. Things desired on the outer level (e.g. wealth, health, power, etc.) are depicted as being scarce and on the verge of being lost (SDG 68) to demons when not taken away altogether by evil beings (SDG 87). Stylistic means, such as repetition, in the important passage of the ritual where the destroying activity reaches its climax—the exorcism (bzlog pa)—emphasize this feeling of being unfairly deprived of something the participants should have. Contextualization is also very important here. In the epic, Gesar is the conqueror of the ground previously lost to the enemy. His mission consists in conquering fortresses, one after another, in an endless pursuit aimed at regaining the space which has been unduly lost. This is Gesar’s symbolism on all levels of the ritual and this can be presented in various ways based on the teachings received by the ritual’s participants. This space of positive qualities is presented in the ritual as the ‘good right’ of the practitioner. This has

been lost but, in fact, naturally belongs to him. He is heir to those qualities. He has a right to them. In fact, re-conquering them is his duty. He has therefore no choice, except to re-conquer what has been lost or unfairly taken away. By playing on psychological reactance, the ritual triggers momentum and exhorts the participants to act.

**Self-interest**

Last but not least, self-interest consists in “want[ing] to get the most and pay the least” (Cialdini: 1993: xiii) or to maximize benefits while minimizing costs. Self-interest is first and foremost an efficient stimulus to get participants actively involved in the ritual. Insofar as the value traditionally attributed to such rituals is high, and little effort is demanded on the part of the participants compared to what is required in order, say, to practice meditation assiduously, the incentives are powerful to ‘give it a go’. This trigger functions in the way of Pascal’s bet. There appears to be little to lose and much to gain. The ritual’s text itself contributes by extolling the value associated with the ritual’s potential outcome, while the participants’ costs in the form of donations, effort, and presence—matters of personal choice conditioned by social and cultural convention—remain rather modest in comparison.

To conclude, the inner level of the ritual as a catalyst for transformation is thus extremely significant inasmuch as its role between the level of outer reality and that of primordial knowing (ye shes) is pivotal. According to the tantric doctrine upon which the ritual is based, altering states of mind and emotions can

---

392 This can explain how the rituals which re-capture the ‘stolen’ bla function on the inner level. From a more Buddhist perspective, the qualities of tathāgatagarbha blocked by adventitious obstacles are indirectly evoked here.
simultaneously transform the outer reality and facilitate the realization of primordial knowing. Emotions and states of mind are part of conventional reality in Mahāyāna, but the psychologization of reality undermines the belief in substantialism and is therefore considered to lead to the realization of primordial knowing, a recurrent theme found across most Mahāyāna texts. This approach corresponds to the famous Prajñāpāramitā statement: “Subhūti, that mind is not the mind. The nature of that mind is inner radiance.” Dharmas are inseparable from mental projections and mere designations. And even mind itself is seen as beyond existence and non-existence. The recognition of the luminous nature of mind eventually leads to the recognition of primordial knowing, or, in the present context, the secret aspect of Gesar.

6.3 The secret level of the ritual

6.3.1 Gesar as primordial knowing

In the SDG, the efficacy of the purification is first established on the basis of the ‘fire of primordial knowing’ (ye shes me)—or ‘sheer knowing’ (rig pa) in other rituals. In the Gesar texts of the ris med movement, rDzogs chen represents the background of the secret level of the practices. This is a very important point since it reminds us that this Buddhist ritual cannot be reduced to its shamanic or psychological elements. This secret character of the practice is the only way to dismantle the ‘reality filters’ (i.e. beliefs, representations, habits, etc.)

394 Ye shes or rig pa is supposedly not the domain of mind, discursiveness, and labelling. A purely intellectual approach to ye shes without any direct experience of it makes, from a methodological standpoint, little sense. It has been entirely left out of the scope of this study as a consequence.
preventing us from seeing things as they are. Since these filters arise on the basis of past programming in the form of imitations, repeated injunctions, and emotionally loaded meaningful events, the ritual aims at weakening these veils by way of similar processes, playing on the fact that beliefs tend to be self-validating. Because things have no inherent existence, their meaning, or their very being, has to be projected. Beliefs play a crucial role in this process. Inasmuch as security depends on having the right set of beliefs—the right programming—in a given situation, beliefs tend to act as self-fulfilling prophecies. Ultimately, the only way to be free from past programming is to live in the nowness of awareness where buttons can be pushed without triggering an immediate chain reaction in terms of trances and hallucinations. In the context of practice, these triggers do not produce their usual effects: insofar as one does not ‘believe’ one’s thoughts to be real, the rambling of the mind based on insecurity, fear and hope, without being stopped, does not induce its usual effects. Dream-like thoughts burst like bubbles, one after another, unreal. Beyond the outer level of external reality consisting of entities (i.e. beings or things) manifesting in one’s mind and the second inner level of thoughts and emotions, on an even more subtle level, the secret Gesar is the very nature of mind, and accomplishing it genuinely is the only ultimate way to cut through all obstacles:

Bestow right now the vast accomplishments of [long] life and merit, glory and wealth, fame and renown, good fortune (phywa) and prosperity (g.yang)!

---

395 On the secret level, as is implicitly stated in the ritual, Gesar is primordial knowing (ye shes) itself.
Show the ultimate that is the nature of reality (chos nyid), the secret of sheer knowing (rig gsang)!

Confer spiritual power, the empowerment of primordial knowing (ye shes)!

Make all deeds become Dharma practice!

Make all encounters meaningful [with regard to Dharma]!

Let all supreme and ordinary accomplishments without exception be achieved spontaneously (lhun gyis grub pa), without effort (’bad med)! T.85: 93–98.

In the SDG, ye shes is presented as being not only an integral part of the ritual but also the very basis of any purification since the ‘fire of primordial knowing’ symbolizes the ultimate purification medium; it is the cause of the purifying smoke. In offering rituals such as fire pūjas, fire also symbolizes the manifestation of the deity, in the sense of ye shes. Ye shes and rig pa represent the ground, or basis, of the outer and inner levels.

In the following passages taken from various Gesar rituals of the ris med movement, Gesar himself is presented as sheer knowing (rig pa) indivisible from its power (rtsal), play (rol pa), or playful dance (rol gar):

From the vast expanse (mkha’ dbyings) of the body of reality (chos sku), [the unity of] sheer knowing and emptiness (rig stong) free from mental proliferations,

Manifests the dgra lha, the best of sentient beings, the dancing power of sheer knowing (rig rtsal gar bsgyur),

---

396 This also applies to sgrol ba (liberation through ritual killing).
The unceasing manifesting power (*rtsal snang*), the deity that infinitely pervades (*rab ’byams*) the peaceful and wrathful ones,

Although you do not waver from the peaceful state that is your mind,

Great and glorious [*heruka*] who completely appears in the form of Rudra in order to destroy the hosts of demons, the enemies of the teaching,


Jewel of Jambudvīpa, great lion, Power (*rtsal*) that subdues the enemies,

Who took the *Vajra* oath in the presence

Of Padma thod phreng, the embodiment of the three roots,

Together with your retinue, do not neglect your sacred pledge, manifest from the vast expanse! T.43: 7–10.

Towards those who are overwhelmed by devotion,

Don’t be idle now, don’t be idle, [but] confer [them] spiritual power!

In this body, erect the heroic fortress of the *dgra bla*!

In this speech, establish the power of the magical voice!

In this mind, kindle the power of sheer knowing (*rig rtsal*), [the unity of] bliss and emptiness!

Accomplish the inseparability from you, lord! T.47: 22–27.

In the palace of great bliss that fulfills all wishes,

Supreme lord of the life force of worldly haughty spirits,
Holder of sheer knowing, power (*rtsal*) that is the most excellent ornament of Jambudvīpa,

We enthrone you as the innermost essence of yoga. T.50: 108–111.

[Your] nature is the *Vajra* of Gentle glory (*Jam dpal/Mañjuśrī*) itself.

[Your] aspect is the form of the *dgra bla* sovereign of all that appears and exists.

In a former life, [you] were the holder of sheer knowing, Padmasambhava,

At present, [you] are the great lion, the power (*rtsal*) of the Jewel that subdues the enemies,

In the future, [you will be] Kalkin Raudra Cakrin.

Supreme deity of my heart, inseparable (*dbyer med*) from me,

State of indivisibility endowed with the *Vajra* voice, . . . T.67: 2–8.

*ho! please pay heed [to me]! *ho! please pay heed [to me]! *ho! please pay heed [to me]!

[You] who manifest the power (*rtsal*) that is compassion, the unceasing play (*rnam rol*)

From the unproduced nature, the constituent element of reality (*chos kyi dbyings*),

Victorious Lord, Lake-Born Vajra, embodiment of the magical manifestation of the peaceful and wrathful deities of the three families,
Gesar, great being, holder of sheer knowing (rig 'dzin), Jewel that subdues the enemies, . . . T.85: 12–18.

ho! [You] who, having at times the playful display (rol pa) of genuine magic power,
Wander everywhere across the heavens, earth, and intermediate space,
And master all the [four] activities that pervade everything, everywhere (rab 'byams),
[You] who, bestowing the accomplishments by being merely evoked,
Travel like lightning by being merely invoked,
Who, united [with us] within the sacred pledge by being merely accomplished,
Engage in action by being merely exhorted,
Vajra of the great lion, armies of dgra blas and wer mas, with outer, inner and secret offering clouds, the excellent ambrosia of primordial knowing, and unsurpassed [manifestations] arising from the play (rnam rol) of Samantabhadra,
We worship you! . . . T.85: 365–373.

The body of illusory manifestation (sku sprul pa) that is spontaneously occurring (rang byung) compassion from the basic space (dbyings), the great fundamental sameness (mnyam pa chen po) of appearance and emptiness,
The ultimate of the eternity (g.yung drung) beyond change, the very nature of the innermost sphere (thig le),
Is Gesar, the Power of the Jewel that subdues the enemies. T.58: 3–7.

Having revealed the expanse (*dbyings*) of the faultless single eye of primordial knowing,
As the state in which all-pervading clarity is completely unimpeded (*zang thal*), unobscured by any veil,
Please increase as wished and without any obstruction
The power and strength that accomplish great benefits for the teaching and beings.
Heroic Gentle glory (*Jam dpal/Mañjuśrī*), illusory dance (*gar*) of primordial knowing,
Great hero who subdues the enemies, the armies of demons, . . . T.59: 18–23.

In the vast expanse where the utterly pure five lights gather
From the state of the naturally occuring great primordial knowing
[that encompasses] all phenomena, the manifesting power (*rtsal snang*) of sheer knowing and emptiness free from limitations,
In the vessel of the inanimate universe together with its contents,
The immeasurable [celestial palace] (*gzhal yas [khang]*) of the blazing great bliss that illuminates everything,
The messenger of the victorious activity of the three roots,
The great lion, the *wer ma* of the light of the white A, . . . T.60: 2–7.

*kye*! The playful expression (*gar*) of the unchanging primordial knowing’s hundred moods,
The lord of the dgra lhas who is accomplished by means of aspiration,
The one imbued with the magic that protects the world,
The lord, the great lion, the king,
Abiding as a multifaceted gem
In the luminous constituent element of reality (chos dbyings), the vast expanse (klong) free from mental proliferations,
The womb (sbubs) of the vital essence (thig le) of rainbow light that is spontaneous presence (lhun grub),
The pure realm of the celestial city,
The matrix of basic space that is the invisible expanse, . . . T.45: 4–12.

The manifesting power (rtsal snang) of bliss, heat, and sheer knowing (rig pa), is whirling and whirling (shigs se shig),
The vast edgeless expanse (thig le chen po) of primordial knowing that playfully manifests (rol pa) as an illusion, [the unity of]
appearance and emptiness,
Equally permeates samsāra and nirvāṇa. T.50: 49–51.

6.3.2 Invoking the secret dgra bla as sheer knowing (rig pa)

The secret level per se is considered to be utterly beyond speech. Yet, ritual speech is used here as well to create a climate ultimately aiming at the recognition of the secret Gesar. Likewise, contextualization and entextualization sometimes appear as mutually exclusive processes throughout the rituals since, after all, the former connects the practitioner to a particular perspective that the latter is
precisely trying to disengage. This constant ambiguity reflects itself in some paradoxical formulations about Gesar, which, when taken literally or understood from the standpoint of the outer level, hardly make sense. The evocation of a totality constituted of antinomic parts leads to apparent contradictions which cannot be resolved through ordinary thought patterns. For instance, in the SDG, Gesar is supposed to uphold Dharma (SDG 45), yet in the same passage he is required to kill all enemies (SDG 38). ‘Gesar, a Buddhist protector’ could almost seem to be an oxymoron. He is supposed to protect all sentient beings (SDG 42), yet he must destroy all demons (SDG 87). The binomial ‘King Gesar’ (ge ser rgyal po, see SDG 10,23,43,58,62,65,86) is fascinating. Gesar is presented as a king (‘with a retinue’, see SDG 11–13,23–24,43,63), but from the epic it is obvious that he is a trickster in the anthropological sense of the term in that he constantly challenges any form of worldly authority (cf. Samuel 1992: 720) and does not submit himself to any rule. In the epic, he was a god who appeared in the form of a human warrior, but he is now considered to be a gnyan. This again echoes the symbolism of his manifestation as a dgra bla, a protective deity intimately connected with the ambiguous notion of ‘intermediate space’. Gesar is definitely a polytypic deity insofar as he is explicitly described or implicitly invoked as a yul lha or gzi bdag (SDG 68), a nor lha (SDG 89,104), a phywa (SDG 101–102), a dgra lha (SDG 74–75,77–78), and even a pho lha397 when he is propitiated as an ancestral deity through his association with the ancestral mountain cult (SDG 71,83,84,98). He is sometimes presented as a worldly deity (‘jig rten pa/laukika) and sometimes as a deity who has transcended the world

---

397 See Balikci: 2008: 93ff.
(jig rten las 'das pa/lokottara), two categories which are usually mutually exclusive (cf. Karmay 2005: 32–51). In a word, he is an ‘all-in-one’ deity who does not fit into any category, and yet, is excluded from none. In this case, ritual speech uses ordinary language in which contextually coded formulae abound but the syntax of the ritual remains quite simple. There is, for example, no syntactic caesura in the septi-syllabic verse structure of the SDG and only a few enjambments are to be found. In spite of this apparent grammatical simplicity, coded formulae—in the form of paradoxes, ambiguities, and contradictions resulting from the use of polysemic terms playing simultaneously with the three levels of reality—cannot be understood if one takes them literally on the outer level alone. The function of figurative speech here is to show that there is obviously more to the ritual than its outer meaning. Like a koan, ritual speech provides a door leading to the nature of mind, without, however, ever revealing by means of words what is behind the door. In this context, words represent a dualistic pathway towards that which is beyond duality. The abstruse formulae are, from this perspective, pointing-out instructions devoid of any intellectual and analytical features. The paradoxes are thus deliberate. Their function is to trigger cognitive dissonance, and ideally, a shift of perspective in the participants’ minds, namely, a gap in the dualistic hypnotic thought patterns. There is therefore in these texts a constant interplay between contextualization and entextualization. Contextualization can be seen as providing the necessary ‘substance’ for the ritual while entextualization is the agent of transformation, the catalyst of the alchemical process of transformation. As a result, the Gesar rituals are full of amphibologies, in the form of statements that can be simultaneously understood on three different
levels. In a very sophisticated manner, the constant interaction and paradoxical complementarity between contextualization and entextualization throughout the text ensures that the three planes of the ritual are inextricably intertwined, which is essential to keep the participants involved while the process of subliminal ‘decentering’ is carried out. From a Buddhist perspective, going beyond dualistic vision is ultimately the only way to avoid poverty, diseases, aggression, and other misfortunes, which is the aim of the Gesar rituals on the outer level. Wealth implies poverty. Transcending both concepts provides an ultimate solution, from the perspective of awakening. Gesar’s journey is symbolic of this process on the secret level as well. Gesar’s power comes from his ancestral origin, the world of the gods. His ordeals on earth are only a means to journey back home, once his task has been achieved. On the secret level, the practitioner has to similarly travel back to primordial time, the time of origin, the moment of power, the nowness of the present moment beyond the three times. The function of the ritual on this level is to re-enact the myth of Samantbhadra. The ultimate resolution of all problems of life is not separate from the practitioner. It is the timeless nature of one’s own mind that can only be directly recognized for oneself. This is the interruption of habit patterns par excellence and the collapse of the binary polarity of conventional reality. In this sense, the transmission of power (dbang) or the ‘wave of blessing’ (sbyin rlabs) conferred by the outer, inner, or secret guru is just this recognition:

By being merely mindful of the innumerable mandalas of the deities of the three roots

In each of the belongings (sku chas) of the glorious dgra bla as well,
We receive the transmission of spiritual power and the supreme empowerment:

The dance beat of the heroic father is being stamped and stamped out—*khrabs se khrab*,

The song of the heroic mother is continuously rising and rising—*sha ra ra*,

The thundering nickers of the horse, the lord of the 'do steeds, is resounding and resounding—*lhangs se lhang*,

The laughter of the heroic *dgra bla* is roaring and roaring—*chems se chem*. T.47: 15–21.

The intermediate space is full of lights and rainbows,

Symbols and melodies are chiming and chiming—*khro lo lo*,

Dances and [various] manifestations are whirling and whirling—*shigs se shig*,

The shining brilliance of the male protectors is sparkling and sparkling—*a la la*,

The beautiful smile of the female protectors is glimmering and glimmering—*lhabs se lhabs*,

Confer spiritual power

To the body, speech, and mind of the divination support as well as mine! T.58: 57–63.

Having produced the forces of blessings, power, and strength,

---

398 See Helffer 1977: 145ff., 411ff. and Tsering 1979: 177 for the differences between 'do or mdo horses and other breeds.
When [sNang srid kun gsal’s] continuum together with his complete retinue is invoked,

One knows with the mind of the utterly unimpeded state (zang thal) that is the [unity of] bliss and emptiness.

The dance of the delightful body is whirling and whirling—shigs se shig,

The symbolic song of the speech filled with laughter is rippling and rippling—kyu ru ru,

The flower rain of rainbow clouds is falling and falling—tho lo lo,

The manifesting power (rtsal snang) of blissful heat and sheer knowing is whirling and whirling—shigs se shig,

Confer spiritual power to us sādhakas! T.60: 15–22.

To conclude on this point, when the warrior’s bravery turns into unconditional fearlessness, the trickster’s humorous joy into spontaneous playfulness, the bodhisattva’s congruence into genuine tenderness, and the magician’s confidence into awareness of the present moment, double binds and paradoxes open a gap devoid of dualistic thoughts. This is the wide open space of the secret Gesar who is recognized in direct experience free from elaborations:

[You] who, by displaying yourself (rol) in the luminous essence and the glorious qualities of the four states of conditioned existence, playfully give us sidelong glances,

Who, with lovely shades (mdangs), perform a joyful dance,

With the melodies (gdangs) of fame, sing merry songs,
And, dissolving the vessel [of the world] and its contents, [sentient beings], into red light,

Transform the inanimate and animate worlds as if you were playing musical instruments,

[You] who, bursting out laughing with the thunder of the dgra blas,

Wave the banner of the wer mas,

And set in [rapid] motion like a lightning flash the playful dance (rol rtsed) of your diverse appearances,

Endowed with the mind of Vajra passion, the [unity of] bliss and emptiness,

. . . T.85: 262–270.

[With] the music of the consort of sheer knowing (rig ma) who ravishes the mind,

The offerings of experiences of bliss and emptiness,

The cymbals of the original bliss occurring at the time of melting,

With the delight of pleasure, joy, and sexual union, and so on, this pure offering of the infinitely vast basic space [displaying itself] as the Vajra melody of [the unity of] bliss and emptiness of all that appears and exists,

We worship you! T.85: 280–284.

6.3.3 Magic as the spontaneous expression of the four activities

There is a vital difference between the magic of the inner level and awakened magic. The former relies on mind, the latter on primordial knowing. But one thing bears some striking similarities. The manifestation of reality is
linked to action. According to Buddhist tenets, the world is *karma*, the world is action, and action connects the inner or secret world with the outer. On the secret level, magic takes the form of the four activities (*phrin las*): controlling, appeasing, enriching, and destroying. In a text like the SDG alone, the four activities are mentioned together twice (SDG 96,99–100). The pacifying activity targets disputes and quarrels (SDG 44), diseases (SDG 46), fears, negativities and obscurations (SDG 90–91), obstacles (SDG 106); the enriching activity refers to Buddha’s teaching (SDG 45,97), prosperity (SDG 89,101–105,111), stability (SDG 98); the destroying activity is omnipresent in the most important parts of the ritual (i.e. SDG 32–43,86–88,92–95).

Each activity corresponds to a defiling emotion and an element (e.g. anger/water, desire/fire, self-centeredness/earth, envy/air). When the nature of this defiling emotion is recognized, the emotion manifests as primordial knowing and, as it retains its specific quality, shines forth spontaneously as one of the four activities. In Mipham’s interpretation of *tathāgatagarbha*, this theory is called *bral ’bras*, ‘the result of separation [from obscurations] or ‘the result of being free [from obscurations]’. The natural qualities of *tathāgatagarbha* manifest once the adventitious dualistic obscurations are eliminated by means of direct recognition free from conceptual thoughts. This recognition consists in utter simplicity and sheer awareness free from conceptual elaborations. The magic of the four activities is, in this rDzogs chen context, based on spontaneously undoing, unlearning, or deconditioning through mere recognition of the primordial state of being: recognizing the nature of anger is actually the power to appease situations; recognizing the nature of ego-centeredness is the power to manifest wealth since
egoism denotes a form of poverty; recognizing the nature of neediness/desire is the power to attract and control; recognizing the nature of envy is the power to see one’s own force; and finally, recognizing the nature of stupidity is sheer knowing:

Through the mere thought [of you], make [us] fulfill without obstructions

The activities of pacification, enrichment, subjugation, and destruction, according to circumstances,

And finally make [us] accomplish your mind

As the body of primordial knowing (ye shes sku) that spontaneously arises within the primordial basic expanse (gdod ma’i gzhi dbyings)!

## Appendix A: Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AO</td>
<td>Acta Orientalia Academiae Scientierum Hungaricae.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOT</td>
<td>Bulletin of Tibetology.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSOAS</td>
<td>Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies of the University of London.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C.</td>
<td>Colophon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMSCAT</td>
<td>Études mongoles et sibériennes, centrasiatique et tibétaines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.</td>
<td>folio.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jsfou.</td>
<td>Journal de la société finno-ougrienne.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MS</td>
<td>Manuscript.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n.</td>
<td>Note.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ÖAW</td>
<td>Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RET</td>
<td>Revue d’études tibétaines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDG</td>
<td><em>bSam pa’i don grub ma</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T.</td>
<td>Text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VÖAW</td>
<td>Verlag der österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WSTB</td>
<td>Wiener Studien zur Tibetologie und Buddhismuskunde.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xyl.</td>
<td>Xylograph.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZAS</td>
<td>Zentralasiatische Studien des Seminars für Sprach- und Kulturwissenschaft Zentralasiens der Universität Bonn.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix B: the original text of bSam pa’i don grub ma
9 Appendix C: Abstract

English

The research about the Tibetan epic of Ge sar has a long tradition. H. Francke, M. Hermanns, R.A. Stein, M. Helffer, and S. G. Karmay, among others, have made pioneering contributions to the analysis of the oral and written materials constituting the Ge sar epic, the largest in the world. However, little attention has hitherto been paid to the corpus of Ge sar Vajrayāna rituals. Ge sar, as a manifestation of Padmasambhava, is associated with Buddhist tantric rituals and practices aimed at increasing wealth, happiness, and well-being. Since there has not been any study of the related texts, the aim of this thesis is to translate and present various early Gesar rituals upon which the practice of Ge sar as a protector is based. The starting point of this research is a text entitled “Ge ser rgyal po la bsangs mchod ’bul tshul bsam pa’i don grub ma” discovered by Gezá Bethlenfalvy in Mongolia. This work is compared to other Gesar practices, in particular those composed by ’Ju mi pham.

Deutsch

10 Appendix D: Curriculum Vitae

Personal Details

Contact: gregory.forgues@univie.ac.at
Citizenship: French

Education

since WS2004
Department of South Asian, Tibetan and Buddhist Studies, University of Vienna, MA in Tibetan and Buddhist Studies—First grade (Diplomprüfung) passed with distinction (mit Auszeichnung bestanden) 31.03.2006.

1987-1992
ESSCA (Ecole Supérieure de Sciences Commerciales d’Angers), France, MBA Degree. Erasmus (1990-91) at the University of Swansea, UK.

1989

IX/1983-VI/1987
Lycée Hoche (High School), Versailles, Frankreich, Baccalauréat A1 degree (Mathematics, English, German, Philosophy).

Experience

III/08-XI/10
Library of the Department of South Asian, Tibetan and Buddhist Studies, University of Vienna, Vienna, Austria.

VII/02-II/04
Citelum SA (VEOLIA/Electricité de France, Paris, France): Area Manager for Asia (China/ASEAN), Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam.

I/96-I/02
Schreder Group (Brussels, Belgium), Managing Director for Southeast Asia, Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam.

IX/94-XII/95
Industriewissenschaftliches Institut (IWI), head of the Department ‘Internationalization’ (consulting), Wien, Österreich.

IV/93-VIII/94
Teaching Experience

SS 2011
Department of South Asian, Tibetan and Buddhist Studies, University of Vienna, Lecturer ‘Introduction to the Theory and Method of Buddhist and Tibetan Studies’ (Introduction to Philosophy of Science, Research in Social Sciences, and Philological methods: Edition/Translation/Interpretation), Vienna, Austria.

WS 2010
Department of South Asian, Tibetan and Buddhist Studies, University of Vienna, Tutor for the lecture given by Dr. Pascale Hugon ‘Introduction to Buddhist and Tibetan Studies (Indo-Tibetan Buddhism—Philosophy/Religion, History, Traditions)’, Vienna, Austria.

WS 2009
Department of South Asian, Tibetan and Buddhist Studies, University of Vienna, Tutor for the lecture given by Dr. Pascale Hugon ‘Introduction to Buddhist and Tibetan Studies (Indo-Tibetan Buddhism—Philosophy/Religion, History, Traditions)’, Vienna, Austria.

Other activities

since VII/2010
Authorized as a Dharma Instructor by Dzongsar Khyentse Rinpoche.

since XII/2005
Advisor to the Investment Committee of the Khyentse Foundation.

Areas of Interest

Buddhist philosophy (Madhyamaka), Buddhist logic (Pramāṇa), Buddhist practices (śamatha/vipaśyānā, Vajrayāna rituals, e.g. Gesar rituals, rDzogs chen), Jam mgon ’ju mi pham rgya mtsho and the ris med movement, Philosophy of Science.

Texts read

Sanskrit:
- Mahābhārata, Nala and Damayanṭi (Dr. A. MacDonald).
- Bhagavadgītā (Dr. A. MacDonald).
- Aśvaghoṣa, Buddhacarita I (Dr. A. MacDonald).
- Divyāvadānam, Kotikarnāvadānam (Dr. H. Lasic).
- Vasubandhu, Abhidharmakośa IX (Prof. J. Taber).
- Vasubandhu, Abhidharmakośabhāṣya I (Dr. M.T. Wieser-Much).
- Nāgārjuna, Mūlamadhyamakakārikā V & XXV, together with Candrakīrti’s Prasannapadā (Dr. A. MacDonald).
• Candrakīrti, Sanskrit Edition of Madhyamakāvatāra (Prof. E. Steinkellner/Dr. H. Krasser/Dr. A. MacDonald).
• Śāntideva, Bodhicaryāvatāra IX together with Prajñākaramati’s pañjikā (Dr. A. MacDonald).
• Dignāga, Nyāyapraveśakāsūtram (Prof. B. Kellner).
• Dignāga, Pramāṇasamuccaya, together with Jinendrabuddhi’s ūkā (Prof. E. Steinkellner/Dr. H. Krasser/Dr. H. Lasic).
• Dharmakīrti, Nyāyabindu II, together with Dharmottara’s ūkā (Dr. H. Lasic).
• Dharmakīrti, Pramāṇaviniścaya II (Dr. H. Krasser).
• Dharmakīrti, Pramāṇavārttika, together with Manorathandandin’s vrūti (Prof. B. Kellner).
• Śāntarakṣita, Tattvasaṃgraha XVI together with Kamalaśīla’s pañjikā (Dr. M.T. Wieser-Much).

Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit:
• Saddharmapuṇḍarīkasūtra, XIII (Prof. C. Werba).
• Bhikṣunīvinaya 24–25,1–12 (Prof. C. Werba).

Pali:
• Udayajātaka Ja 458 (Prof. C. Werba).

Tibetan:
• Bön Ritual Srīd pa’i gto nag mgo gsum (Prof. C. Ramble).
• sKyes rabs brgya pa-Jātakas (Dr. K. Tropper).
• Samdhinirmocanasūtra (entire text-Dr. Jungjie Chu).
• Khang dkar tshul khrims skal bzang, Deb snog gsar ma (Dr. Junjie Chu).
• mKhan po tshul khrims rgya mtsho, bsDus don of sGam po pa’s Dvags po thar pa rgyan (Prof. K.D. Mathes).
• Atiśa, Byang chub lam gyi sgron ma (Dr. M.T. Wieser-Much).
• Sa skya Panḍita, Thub pa’i dagongs gsal (Khenpo Ngawang Jorden).
• Sa skya Panḍita, gZhung lungs legs bshad (Khenpo Ngawang Jorden).
• Nam mkha’i nor bu, rDzogs pa chen po ‘iskor gyi dris lan (Dr. Junjie Chu).
• Mi pham, Nor bu ke ta ka on Śāntideva’s Bodhicaryāvatāra IX (Prof. H. Tauscher), together with various texts composed by Mi pham.
• Tshad ma kun las btus pa shes bya’i rab tu byed pa’i rgyan (Dr. H. Lasic).

Languages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>mother tongue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>fluent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>fluent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vietnamese</td>
<td>conversational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanskrit</td>
<td>reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classical Tibetan</td>
<td>reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit</td>
<td>reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pali</td>
<td>reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modern Tibetan</td>
<td>beginner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>beginner</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>